

Nesfield's
English Grammar Series.

Book III.

FULLY EXPLAINED WITH CHINESE AND GIVING
SOLUTION OF EXAMPLES
IN THE TEXT.

第 三 冊
納 氏
英 文 法 講 義

甯 陽 趙 灼 譯 述

(卷 五)

叙

西班牙王嘉樂第五之言曰。多識一國之語言。即多收一人之用。寧特多收一人之用而已。吾以爲多識一國之語言。即多友一國之賢才。蓋語言文字者。一國賢才所藉以表著其道術。而人類交換智識之媒介也。第四世紀之間。條頓人之侵入不列顛也。固猶日耳曼一蒙昧之族耳。其思想粗獷。其語言簡陋。故其時文字類多具體的名詞。而缺抽象的名詞。然方羅馬之盛時。不列顛實隸其版圖之下。其思想文化。久涵濡於三島之中。拉丁完美之文言。足補盎古魯撒遜人之所未備。糅雜融合。日益發達。而英國之語言文字。遂粲然而明備。我國文字繁重。不

易解識。且文言不能一致。故文教之普及爲難。竊爲當用羅馬之字母。以代我國固有之字音。文字語言。可以合一。簡而易行。庶能逮下。抱懷此意。亦既有年。頗欲勒爲一書。質之當世。然茲事體大。牽於人事。未能就也。趙君灼譯納氏英文法。求序於余。余以英文多出於羅馬。而深感我國文言之不能合一也。聊述夙所懷抱者質之趙君。若夫此書之完善。則固讀者所共見。無煩鄙人之覩縷也。

光緒三十三年十一月

丹 徒 馬 良

0016980

緒 言

一納氏文法叢書有二特色。不偏於理論而注重實際一也。專爲東洋人而著者二也。故其書最適於我國人研究斯學之用。但原書課本体裁。處處留爲教師解釋之餘地。故意多含渾。初學驟讀。未易了解。茲譯成講義。以餉同胞。

一是書雖顏曰講義。然仍依原書之章節次序。無敢倒置。此蓋不獨存其真。亦欲使讀者便於與原參讀耳。

一此編專以使初學知得文法之綱領。辨別詞類之異同爲主。故特從各方面多設問題。循循善誘。勉使讀者將此義通於心而印於腦。蓋其全編主眼即在此也。願諸讀者幸毋草草看過。

一練習問題。貴有斧正。否則不自知其正誤。則與不練習者等。此書於其問題。詳細解答。學者於獨習之中。即可收良師益友之効。

- 一答案之譯解。間間插入各句。於讀者誠便。但恐隨讀隨答。而不自加思索。則過眼烟雲。空無所得。故特首列問題。使讀者先以己意答之。而後與其答案對照。庶幾有所心得。
- 一初學每因不知中英文言位置之異同。故有雖知語義而不明句義者。此書於其例文。特分單語譯註與成語意譯。聊以示其一班。
- 一答人問題。非有相當學力。未易得其正確。譯者末學。不敢妄加杜撰。其一切答案。除照錄業師口授外。並參考他書。以期無誤。
- 一此書僅成一人之手。譯者學植淺薄。誤謬之處。在所不勉。海內達人。幸以教之。

光緒三十四年六月

譯者謹識



第一編	Analytical Outline 解剖之概畧	General Definitions 一般之定義	1
第二編	Nouns 名詞:—		
	章一	The kinds of Nouns 名詞之種類	15
	„二	Substitutes for a Noun 名詞之代用辭	25
	„三	Gender 性	26
	„四	Case 位	32
	„五	Number 數	37
第三編	Adjectives 形容詞:—		
	章一	The kinds of Adjectives 形容詞之種類	50
	„二	The two Uses of Adjectives 形容詞之二用法	67
	„三	Substitutes for Adjectives 形容詞之代用辭	68
	„四	On the Idiomatic Uses of Articles 冠詞之慣用法	69
	„五	Adjectives used as Nouns 形容詞用如名詞	76
	„六	Comparison of Adjectives 形容詞之比較	82
第四編	Pronouns 代名詞:—		
	章一	Personal Pronouns 人稱代名詞	89
	„二	Demonstrative Pronouns 指示代名詞	99
	„三	Relative Pronouns 複牒代名詞	106
	„四	Interrogative Pronouns 疑問代名詞	114

第五編 Verbs 動詞:一

章一	The kinds of Verbs 動詞之種類	117
„二	Transitive Verbs 他動詞	121
„三	Intransitive Verbs 自動詞	125
„四	Active and Passive Voices 原動語氣及 被動語氣	133
„五	Mood, Tense, Number and Person 法, 數, 時, 及人稱	137
„六	Indicative Mood 直說法	140
„七	Imperative Mood 命令法	153
„八	Subjunctive Mood 前提法	155
„九	Infinitive Mood 無定法	160
„十	Participles 分詞	169
„十一	Gerunds and Verbal Nouns 動名詞及 動詞狀名詞	175

第六編 Adverbs 詞副:一

章一	The kinds of Adverbs 副詞之種類	181
„二	Degrees of Comparison in Adverbs 副 詞之程度比較	189
„三	Forms of Adverbs 副詞之形	189
„四	Verbs compounded with Adverbs 動詞 與副詞混合	194
„五	The two Uses of Adverbs 副詞之二用法	195

第七編 Prepositions 前置詞:一

第八編 Conjunctions 接續詞:一

章一	Co-ordinative Conjunctions 同位接續詞	228
„二	Subordinative Conjunctions 從位接續詞	238

第九編 Interjections 感歎詞:一

NESFIELD'S GRAMMAR SERIES.

Book III.

Chapter I 第一編

ANALYTICAL OUTLINE: GENERAL DEFINITIONS.

解剖之概畧

一般之定義

1. **A Sentence** 文也者，表示完全意義之結合語也。完全意義者何，論一事物而更及於他事物以互相顯明之謂。故語雖結合，而僅單言一事物者，即其意義為不完全，而因之亦不得謂之文。

A ship went out to sea (一般出於海)

此“ship”是一物，而“went out to see”是說明“ship”之事情而成完全之意義，故謂之文。

2. 文有五種如：一

(I) 文之論事物，單含有肯定或否定意者，謂之**確定文 Assertive**。

A man's success depends chiefly on himself. (affirmative 肯定之意)

(人之成功，耑恃其人之自己)

He did not get much help from others. (negative 否定之意)

(他是不甚借助於人)

肯定者，有其物爲其事之意，而否定則正與此意相反。故設改第一例文爲“人之成功不恃其人之自己，”則是爲否定文。第二例文改作“他每借助於人，”則爲肯定文。

(2) 文之含有命令或禁制意者，謂之**命令文 Imperative**

Rely chiefly on your own efforts (Command 命令之意)
(全恃汝自己之努力)

Do not rely much on the help from others. (Prohibition 禁制之意) (莫專恃他人之助)

(3) 文之含有問及於事物之意者謂之**疑問文 Interrogative**.

Have you finished that task? (汝已畢其工課乎)

(4) 文之表示希望意者，謂之**願望文 Optative**.

God save the queen (神女祐皇)

(5) 確言文而同時又表心中之感情者，謂之**感嘆文 Exclamatory**.

What a foolish fellow you have been!

(汝真是蠢漢矣)

3. **Subject and Predicate 主辭及敘述辭**——語(一語或一語以上)之表示人或物之立於主体以言他事物者，謂之**主辭 Subject**，語(一語或一語以上)之關於主辭之人或物所言之事者，謂之**敘述辭 Predicate**.

A *ship* went out to sea.

此例之“ship,”是言“went out”事之主体物，故曰主辭。而“went out”是關於主辭“ship”所言之事，故曰敘

述辭。以是之故，主辭與敘述辭為構成文之要素，蓋二者缺一，則不能表示完全之意義。

4. **A Phrase** 句為有意義之結合語，惟其意義不完全，是以謂之句 **Phrase**。

On the river (在河上) Through thick and thin (貫難易之障礙) A bird in the hand (一鳥在掌中)。

5. **A Clause** 節者一大文中之一部之文也。

This is the house | where we live.

(此是我等所住之屋)

此例之“where we live”是一文，蓋其已具有“we”為主辭及“live”為敘述辭也。“this is the house”亦是一文，即“this”為其主辭，而“is”為其敘述辭。此二者皆是此文中之一部分。故皆謂之節。

6. **Nouns** 名詞者，名各物之語也，如“ship,” “fox” (狐), “house,” “man” 者是。故名詞云者，即名字耳 naming word (“noun” 與 “name” 其性質意義皆同，其不同者音讀而已)。

7. **Pronouns** 代名詞者，字之用為代稱名詞者也。

A ship went out to sea, and *she* had all her sails up.

(船出於海，且彼已高揚其帆)

此例之“she”是用為代稱名詞之“ship,” 且省却“ship”記載兩次，故代名詞者，代字也。其主用為避却名詞之反覆記載耳。

8. **Adjectives** 形容詞者。欲形容名詞時，其用於此目的之語是也。形容名詞云者，不外加添某事於名詞之意義之意。

A *fine* ship went out to sea.

(一美麗船出於海)

此例之“fine”是形容乎名詞之“ship,”即加添美麗之事於船之意義者也。蓋“adjective”之取義,不外以其有“adding”(加添)之意,而加添名詞之意義耳。

9. Verbs 動詞者,用為敘述之語也。敘述云者,關於人或物而言某事之意。

A fine ship *went out* to sea.

此例關於“ship”所言之事者即“went out,”故“went out”即敘述辭亦即動詞也。故文之敘述辭必要動詞,或至少合一動詞於其內乃可。

10. Preposition with its Object 前置詞及其賓辭:——前例“to sea”之“to”字是前置詞 Preposition 此字表示“sea”所示之物,以對於“went out”所示之事情之為如何關係也。

名詞代名詞或同等名詞 (*noun-equivalent*) 之連接於前置詞之後者,謂之前置詞之賓辭 Object.

由是觀之,前置詞之用法,乃表示前置詞之賓辭所表之人物,而對於他事物之為如何關係也。

11. Conjunctions 接續詞是聯絡字,即聯合此字與句於他字或句,聯合此文於他文是也。

(a) He made himself mean *and* of no reputation.

(彼自賤其身而為無名譽者)

(b) May he live long *and* (may he) die happily.

☞ (彼或長壽而死於幸福)

(a) 例形容詞之“mean”是由“and”以聯合於“of no reputation”一句。(b) 例“may he live long”一文,是

由“*and*”以聯合於“*may he die happily*”一文，兩“*and*”字皆為接續詞。

12. **Adverbs** 詞亦同於形容詞而為形容語，但形容詞則限於形容名詞，而副詞則除名詞代名詞之外，不拘何種詞類皆能形容之。

備考。一在他文法書，其副詞之定義則謂“副詞者，是語之用為形容動詞形容詞，或其他副詞云。”但副之作用，尙能形容前置詞及接續詞，彼未嘗言此，是未得為完全之定義也。此意在後文 253 節更說明之。

The *very* fine ship has *already* sailed *half* through the channel. (彼甚美麗之船，已半航過海峽矣)

此例之“*very*,”是副詞而形容乎形容詞之“*fine* ;”“*already*”亦是副詞而形容乎動詞之“*has sailed* ;”又“*half*”亦是副詞而形容乎前置詞之 *through*。

13. **Interjections** 感 詞是異於他種類，其用時不必連結文中之他部分，但純為獨立之聲音字，而投於文中以表其心中之感情耳。

My son, *alas!* is not industrious.

(嗚呼，吾兒是不勤勉)

此例之“*alas*”是純為一聲音字而投於此文以表其感嘆，且與他語全無關係。

14 **The Parts of Speech defined** 詞類之定義：——凡字之用於不同目的者，因以分之為不同類，不同類之字謂之詞類 **Parts of Speech**，詞類之數有八種，前已言之詳矣，茲更簡論之如下：—

- (1) 名詞者，名人類及事物之語也。
- (2) 代名詞者，代用名詞或同等名詞之語也。
- (3) 形容詞者，形容名詞之語也。
- (4) 動詞者，關於人類或事物而言其事之語也。
- (5) 前置詞者，置於名詞或同等名詞之前，而表示連接於其次之名詞或同等名詞所示之人或物，對於他事物之關係之語也。
- (6) 接續詞者，連結此字或句於彼句，此節於他節之語也。
- (7) 副詞者，形容名詞代名詞以外諸詞類之語也。
- (8) 感嘆詞者，投於文中以表其心中之感情之聲音語也。

15. The Articles 冠詞：——“A”與“The”等是為冠詞。“The”謂之有定冠詞 Definite Article，蓋以其特指乎名詞也。“a”與“an”謂之無定冠詞 Indefinite Article，蓋以其概指乎名詞也。

John found *a* purse and *a* book near *the* gate of my house. There was no money in *the* purse. *The* name of *the* owner was in *the* book.

(約翰在吾屋之園門口處拾得一銀包及一本書，銀包原無銀在內，其書是錄有屬主之名)

此例之“*a* purse”及“*a* book,”原非指定其銀包及書，不過泛指之耳，故用無定冠詞之“*a*.”至“*the* gate”是指定其門口；“*the* purse”是指定其銀包；“*the* book”是指定其書；“*the* owner”是指定此書之屬主；皆為特指其名詞

故用有定冠詞之“*the*.”悟此中有定冠詞與無定冠詞之用法，則兩詞之所以異自明。

冠詞原非別爲一種詞類，蓋純然形容詞耳。“*a*”與 *an* 是形容詞“*one*”之簡寫形，而“*the*”亦“*this*”“*that*”“*these*”“*those*”之簡寫形。

16. Finite Verbs: Number and Person 有定動詞：數及人稱：——凡動詞之部分，而可爲文之敘述辭者，謂有定動詞 *Finite Verb*。

“*Finite*”有“*limited*”（限定）之意，動詞而以有定見稱者，因其人稱（第一，第二，第三），及數（單數或複數），皆限定與其主辭爲一致也。

(*a*) *I see him.*

(*b*) *They see him.*

此兩例文之“*see*,”皆爲同形之動詞。但在(*a*)例之動詞是第一人稱及單數，蓋以其主辭之“*I*”是第一人稱及單數也。(*b*)例之動詞是第三人稱及複數，蓋以其主辭之“*they*,”是第三人稱及複數也。

17. Parts of a Verb not finite 無定動詞之部分：——動詞有數部分爲無定，無定云者，不限定於特別之數及人稱也，蓋其既不與文之主辭爲一致，復不能爲文之敘述辭。

此類動詞之部分有三：——(1) 無定法 *Infinitive Mood*，如“*I wish to retire*”（余願退職）。(2) 分詞 *Participle*；如“*a retired officer*”（一退職之官）。(3) 動名詞 *Gerund*；如“*I think of retiring*”（余思退職）。

18. Double Parts of Speech 詞類：——除 § 14 所列舉之八種詞類外，更有三種是由兩種合而爲一者，此名可

爲複詞類。

(1) **A Participle 分詞**：——此是由動詞與形容詞合併而成。

A retired officer live next door. (一退職之官住於隣戶)

此例之“retired”是一動詞，蓋以其原是動詞“retire”之部分也。然又名之爲形容詞曷故，蓋以其形容名詞之“officer”也。故此分詞可呼之爲動詞狀形容詞 Verbal Adjective.

(2) **A Gerund 動名詞**：——此是由動詞與名詞合併而成

I think of retiring soon from service.

(余思早日告退職務)

此例之“retiring”亦是一動詞，蓋以其亦屬於動詞“retire”之部分也。然又呼爲名詞曷故，蓋以其爲前置詞“of”之賓辭也。故此動名詞可呼之爲動詞狀名詞 Verbal Noun.

(3) **A Relative Pronoun or Adverb 代名詞或複
據副詞**：——如“who”“which”等之複據代名詞，是代名詞與接續詞相合而成。“where”“when”等之複據副詞，是副詞與接續詞相合而成。

This is the house where we live.

此例之“where”是一副詞，蓋以其形容動詞之“live”也。然又稱爲接續詞何故，蓋以其連結“This is the house”與“we live”兩文也。故複據副詞有時名之爲接續副詞 Con-junctive Adverb. 複據代名詞者，如“I have lost the book which I bought (余失去余買來之書)。此例之“which”是一代

名詞，蓋以其代用名詞之“book”也。然又謂之爲接續詞何故，蓋亦以其連結“I have lost the book”與“I bought”兩文也。故有時亦名之爲接續代名詞 *Conjunctive Pronoun*。

接續副詞之名，原是由 Mason 所定，見其所著之文法書 105 頁 262 節，但吾定以複牒副詞更覺穩妥。

19. **Apposition of Noun with Noun** 名詞與名詞之同位：——名詞而謂之與名詞或代名詞同位者，以其所指爲同一之人或事物也。

Noun.—Philip, *King of Macedon*, was father to Alexander the Great. (馬其頓王之費臘是亞力山大之父也)

Pronoun.—I, the *man*, you were looking for am here.

(汝所尋之人，余是在此)

(a) 例“*king*”之名詞所示之人，是與“*Philip*”所示之人是同一之人也。故“*king*”之名詞與“*Philip*”之名詞爲同位。(b) 例之“*man*”所示之人，是與“*I*”代名詞所示之人是同一之人也。故“*man*”之名詞與代名詞之“*I*”爲同位。

20. **Apposition of Sentence with Noun** 文與名詞之同位：——文與名詞之同位時，其文必藉接續詞“*that*”以牽合之。

The rumour *that you were coming* was Generally believed.

(傳聞汝來之說，已見信於一般矣)

21. **Apposition of Noun with Sentence** 名詞與文之同位：——名詞爲示動詞之動作者，可以與文或含蓄名詞(含於文中之意義，而文面上不現其字，但亦有現之者)同位。

He killed his prisoners—*a barbarous act*.

(彼殺其捕虜，是野蠻的之所爲)

此例名詞之“act,”是與含蓄其意于文中而文面上不現之名詞“killing”(the *killing* of prisoners) 同位。

22. Forms of Subject 主辭之形：——文之主辭須為名詞或同等名詞。茲舉其重要之形如左：一

- (a) Noun: a *ship* went out to sea.
- (b) Pronoun: *He* (指前文所指名之人或某人) was convicted.
(他已被定罪)
- (c) Infinitive: *To err* (=error or proneness to error 過失或過失之傾向) is human. (過失是人事)
- (d) Gerund: *Sleeping* is necessary to health.
(睡為健康上所必要)
- (e) Phrase: *How to do this* puzzles all of us.
(如何為此令我等皆迷亂)
- (f) Clause: *Whoever was caught* was sent to jail.
(不論何人, 捉到即送入監)

23. Transitive Verbs 他動詞: Verb and Object 動詞 賓辭:——凡動詞所表之動作或感情, 為不僅限於其自己之一身, 而尚直向於他人或他物者, 是謂之他動詞。至於受他動詞所向之人或物者, 是謂之動詞之賓辭。

That snake bit *the man*. (彼蛇嚙人)

此例之“bit”是他動詞, 因其嚙及於人也, 而“man”是其賓辭, 因其是為受嚙者也。

24. Forms of Object 賓辭之形:——賓辭種種之形, 可依主辭之形等例以表明之。

- (a) Noun: That snake bit *the man*.
- (b) Pronoun: That snake bit *him*.

- (c) Infinitive: We desire *to succeed* (=success).
(我等望成功)
- (d) Gerund: He loves *riding*.
(彼愛乘騎)
- (e) Phrase: We do not know *how to do this*.
(我等不知如何爲此)
- (f) Clause; We do not know *what he wants*.
(我等不知其要甚麼)

25. **Facitive Verbs 變成動詞: Complement 完成辭:**
——他動詞所必要者爲不僅一賓辭(如普通他動詞之作用),
而此外尚要一辭或數辭以造完全之敘述者,是謂之變成動詞,
而當此完全敘述之辭者謂之**完成辭**.

He put the school (object) *into good order* (complement).

(他整頓其學校)

That grief drove him (object) *mad* (complement).

(彼悲哀事遂使其狂)

They made him (object) *laugh* (complement).

(彼等令其笑)

此例各文若不用完成辭,而但云“he put the school,
“that grief drove him” “they made him,”是全無意義.故
各例文諸動詞必不可無完成辭,而因是其動詞所示之動作,亦
變其賓辭所示之人或物,而成爲他之狀態矣.

26. **Intransitive Verbs 自動詞:**——動詞所表之動作
或感情,爲限於其自己之本身,而未嘗有直向於他人或他物
者,是謂之**自動詞**.

Fish *swim*. (魚游泳) Rivers *flow* (河流) All animals *die*.

(凡動物皆死)

此例之“swim,”“flow,”“die.”是表動作之動詞，且其動作限於其本身而無所他及者，故皆為自動詞。

27. **Intransitive Verbs with Complement 有完成辭自動詞**：——自動詞原不要賓辭，然亦可以如他動詞之作用而要完成辭。此種自動詞謂之**不完全敘述自動詞 Intransitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication.**

He became a good scholar. (他成為良學生)

Sleep is necessary to health. (睡為健康所必要)

此例之“became,”“is,”皆是不完全之敘述，而“a good scholar,”“necessary to health,”是其完成辭，若刪除此等完成辭。則兩文皆無意味矣。

28. **Absolute Use of Verbs 動詞之絕對用法**：——動詞用時而對於文中之他文，而兩無文法上之關係者，謂之絕對用法：—

(a) **Participle 分詞**(解見 § 384 及 § 399)：—

The sun have set, all went home. (有名詞)

(日既西沈，則皆歸家)

Supposing we are late, the door will be locked. (無名詞)

(若吾等遲歸，則門將鎖矣)

此例“having set”是有名詞之“sun,”“supposing”是無名詞。兩者皆與文中之他部分全無文法上之關係，惟自獨立而已。故謂之絕對。

(b) **Infinitive Mood 無定法**(解見 § 235 及 § 236)：—

To think that he should have told a lie! (單純無定法)

(以為他必說謊矣)

I am *-to speak* plainly—much displeased with you. (動
名詞狀無定法) (明以告汝, 余對於汝甚不喜歡)

此例 “to think” 是示感嘆之意, “to speak” 用爲夾註,
皆絕對用法.

(c) Imperative Mood 命令法 (解見 § 224):—

A few men—*say* twelve—may be expect shortly.

(有數人約十二人, 不久有可望)

29. Introductory Adverb 引導副詞:—自動詞之主
辭而置在自動詞之後者, 此動詞是常由副詞之 “there” 以導
入之. “there” 而用於此法, 則非 “在其處” (in that place) 之
義, 蓋純然爲導入其自動詞耳. 故此字於此, 是全無意味.

There are some men (subject) who never drink wine.

(有人全不飲酒)

There came a maiden (subject) to my door.

(一處女來吾門口)

30. Kinds of Phrase 句之種類:—下所揭載諸句之
種類, 要各自區別之:—

(a) Adverbial Phrase 副詞句, 即句而有副詞之作用
者:—

I hope you will work better *in future*.

(余望汝將來更做好些)

Bind him *hand and foot*, and take him away.

(縛其手足而拿之去)

此 “in future” 句是爲副詞之作用, 而形容 “will work” 之
動詞, 故謂之副詞句.

(b) Prepositional Phrase 前置詞句, 即句而有前置詞

之作用者(一句之末而有單純之前置詞):—

In the event of our father's death, we shall be left poor.

(因我等父親之死, 我等將變成貧乏)

He worked hard *for the sake of* a prize.

(他爲要賞而勤工)

此 “in the event of” 一句, 是示其賓辭 “our father's death” 所示之事, 對於 “we shall be left poor” 所示之事, 爲如何之關係, 故謂之前置詞句。

(c) **Conjunctive Phrase** 接續詞句, 即句而有接續詞之作用者 (一句之末而有單純之接續詞):—

I am tired *as well as* hungry.

(余之疲適如飢)

He took medicine *in order that* he might recover.

(他服藥得宜, 如此他可以復元)

(d) **Absolute Participle Phrase** 絕對分詞句, 此定義見 § 383:—

The sun having set, they all went home.

(e) **Interjectional or Exclamatory Phrase** 感嘆詞或感動句, 此定義見 § 294:—

Well to be sure! *For shame!* *Good heavens!*

(是真的)

(恥哉)

(怪哉)

31. **Accent** 剛音, **Emphasis** 語勢:— 在於單字中之發強音部分謂之勢音 **Accent**:—

Sùp-ply', sim'-ply: reb-el' (名詞), re-bel' (動詞)

(供給)

(簡單)

(叛者)

(叛逆)

在於全句中之發強音部分謂之語勢 **Emphasis**:—

Silver and gold have I none. (銀與金我則無之)

I appeal from Philip *drunk* to Philip *sober*.

(余由醉酒之費，轉訴於清醒之費)

Chapter II. 第二編

NOUNS. 名詞

§ I 章一. THE KINDS OF NOUNS.

名詞之種類

32. **Noun Defined** 名詞之定義：——名詞者，名人物之辭也 (參照 § 14).

33. 名詞分爲五種：一

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| | { Proper 固有.....1
Common 普通.....2
Collective 集合.....3
Material 物質.....4 |
| i. Concrete 實體名詞 | |
| i. Abstract 抽象名詞 | |
|5 | |

Proper Nouns 固有名詞

34. **A Proper Noun** 固有名詞者，人物特別之名，而他人物所不能假用，蓋以示區別於衆也；如 *James* (人名)，*Gulistan* (書名)，*Lucknow* (都名)，*India* (國名)。

備考 1. 一凡寫固有名詞之起首一字母，須寫頭文字 (Capital Letter).

備考 2. 一凡字句之加附固有名詞者，所以避却文義之所指近於浮泛之

獎也。故云 “Alexander the Great” (亞歷山大), “St. Paul” (聖保羅 St. = Saint 之畧), “Boston in America” (亞美利加之波士頓), 必加附 “the Great,” “St.,” “in America,” 以指定其爲如何之 “Alexander,” “Paul,” “Boston,” 乃不近於浮泛。不然, 世界之胃是名以名其人與地者不知凡幾, 而僅以是稱之, 則聽者不知其所指矣。

Common Nouns 普通名詞

35. A Common Noun 普通名詞者, 名之爲同種人物所通有, 而非一人一物所專有者也; 如 “man” (人), “book” (書), “country” (國)。

此 “man” 未嘗指定一人如所謂 “James;” *book* 未嘗指定一書如所謂 “Gulistan;” *Country* 亦未嘗指定一國如所謂 “India.” 惟統指一般之人, 書及國耳。故固有名詞, 是限於一人一物之名稱, 而普通名詞, 是種類之名稱也。

36. 固有名詞亦有用於普通名詞者, 但其用時必依下文所揭之兩義, (1) 表爵位 (rank) 或官職 (office), (2) 表人物之種類。

(1) 如 *Cæsar* (古昔羅馬皇帝), *Caliph* (回回教國亞刺比亞之攝政者), *Sultan* (土耳其皇帝), *Khedive* (波斯之王), *Czar* (俄羅斯皇帝) 等, 本是固有名詞。但其用爲官職之名稱, 官職則容有多少之人在內。故即謂 “the twelve Cæsars” (十二人之皇帝), “the first Caliphs” (始初四人之攝政), “the Sultian of Turkey” (土耳其之皇帝), “the Czar of Russia” (俄羅斯之皇帝), 亦不得謂之固有名詞。

(2) 固有名詞爲示人物之一種, 而意在說明之意義者, 是成爲普通名詞, 如 “He is the Newton of the age” (他是當世之奎頓), “Newton” (十六七世紀之交之天文大家) 原爲固有名詞, 但此

是用爲說明其天文學問之深博，其意即爲「彼是當世之第一流天文學者」云耳。故亦不得謂之固有名詞。

Collective Nouns 集合名詞

37. **Collective Noun** 集合名詞者，表示由各個同種之人物，所成立之一群或團體也。

例如有多數羊在原野 (“there may be many sheep in a field”), 由其全体上觀之，是一群之羊耳 (“but only one flock”). 但 “sheep” 是普通名詞，用之稱羊群中何個之羊皆可，是則僅稱之曰 “sheep,” 是未足表出其爲一群也。惟稱之曰 “flock,” 此 “flock” 非對於群中之各個羊而言，乃包舉其一切之羊而言也。故謂之集合名詞。

37. 集合名詞亦普通名詞之一種，普通名詞固可用於同種之人物，集合名詞亦可用於同種之集合體。

譬如有甲乙丙三群羊於此，其群雖有甲乙丙之異，而其物則同是一種之羊耳，故 “flock” 之集合名詞，不第可以稱甲之羊群，亦可以稱乙與丙之羊群也。又 “class” (班級) 之集合名詞，於學校無論何等之班級，亦隨可用而稱之。

38. **Nouns of Multitude** 衆多名詞與集合名詞，其間大有差別，茲分其界限如下：—

(a) 集合名詞爲表一不可分離之完全團體，且附從之動詞爲單數 (§ 16).

The jury *consists* of twelve persons.

(陪審官由十二人而成立)

(b) 衆多名詞爲舉一群之人或物而示其各個，且不拘其名詞之單數與複數，其附從之動詞必爲複數 (§ 16).

The jury (爲陪審官之人) *were* divided in their opinions.

(陪審官之人各殊其意見)

在 (a) 例之 “jury” 是指陪審官團體，而 (b) 例之 “jury” 是指一團中之各人。

Nouns of Material 物質名詞

40. **A Noun of Material** 物質名詞者，表事物構成之本質也。如 iron (鐵), clay (泥), wheat (麥), water (水), rice (米), tea (茶), snow (雪)。

故 “sheep” 雖是普通名詞，而 “mutton” (羊肉) 是物質名詞。

41. 有同一之辭，而或用於普通詞名，或用於物質名詞者，因其用法之異，而意義亦隨之而變。

Fish live in water. *Fish* is good for food.

(魚住水中)

(魚是好食品)

第一例之 “fish” 是一名詞而表種種之魚，故爲普通名詞。第二例之 “fish” 是表食物之體質，係由魚構成，故爲物質名詞。

Abstract Nouns 抽象名詞

42. **An Abstract Noun** 抽象名詞者，表虛體之事物也。如 quality (性質), state (狀態), action (動作)。

Quality.—Cleverness (聰穎), height (高度), length (長度), humility (遜讓), roguery (狡猾), colour (顏色)。

State.—Poverty (貧窮), manhood (壯年), bondage (束縛), pleasure (愉快), youth (年少)。

Action.—Laughter (笑), movement (動作), flight (逃走), choice (選擇), revenge (復讐)。

前所述之四種名詞（固有，普通，集合，物質），皆足以關於五官之感覺。故其爲物也，可以視，可以聽，並可以嗅而味，而觸之，此其所以謂之寔體名詞也。若抽象名詞則反是，惟離其物體而想象以言其性質，狀態，動作耳。

例如石吾知其爲堅物體 (hard), 即至與石同性質之磚鐵, 亦莫不若是也。於是吾得以離其物體而謂之堅剛矣 “hardness.” 抽象云者, 即「抽出」“drawn off” 之意, 蓋由物體中抽出以名其物也。故 “hardness” 是抽象名詞, 而鐵石等是寔體名詞。

43. 同一詞名而因其所用於目的之不同, 故或爲抽象名詞, 或爲普通名詞。

抽象名詞用於普通名詞, 實體名詞時, 其所表者有二, (a) 人具有之性質, (b) 物所屬之性質, 狀態或動作:—

(a) *Examples of Persons* 人之例

<i>Justice</i>	{	1. (正直) The quality of being just.	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (判事) The judge, or one who administers justice.	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Beauty</i>	{	1. (美麗) The quality or state of being beautiful.	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (佳人) A person possessing beauty.	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Authority</i> ...	{	1. (權力) The power or right to command.	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (執權者) A person possessing authority.	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Nobility</i> ¹¹ ...	{	1. (高貴) The quality of being noble.	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (貴族) Those who are of the class of nobles.	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Witness</i> ...	{	1. (證據) Evidence or testimony.	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (證人) One who gives the evidence.	<i>Concrete.</i>

(b) *Examples of Things* 事物之例

<i>Judgment</i> ...	{	1. (裁判) The act or quality of judging.....	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (判決書) The verdict given by the judge.	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Sight</i>	{	1. (視力) The art or faculty of seeing.....	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (景色) The thing seen 'a fine sight.'	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Speech</i>	{	1. (說話能力) The faculty of speaking.	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (演說) The speech delivered: the word spoken.	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Wonder</i> ...	{	1. (驚動) The feeling of wonder or surprise.	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (怪事) The wonderful event or object.	<i>Concrete.</i>
<i>Kindness</i> ...	{	1. (厚情) The quality of being kind.....	<i>Abstract.</i>
		2. (慈惠品) The kind thing done.....	<i>Concrete.</i>

44. 動名詞與動詞之單純無定法 (§ 234), 雖其形非抽象名詞, 但就其實際上言之, 則與抽象名詞無異. 左舉之兩例, 是其同一之意義者:—

Service is better than idleness. (*Abstract Noun*).

(服勞勝於懶怠)

Serving is better than idleness. (*Gerund*).

To service is better than idleness. (*Infinitive Mood*).

45. 抽象名詞而用於擬人 *Personified* 時, 則成爲固有名詞. 擬人云者, 抽象名詞所表之性質, 狀態或動作, 恰如言有一體之人也. 此抽象名詞是與固有名詞同其效用, 故其起端之字母要寫頭文字.

He is the favoured child of *Fortune*.

(他是幸運之寵兒)

Let not *Ambition* mock their useful toil.

(莫嘲彼大希望家而爲有用之勤勞)

46. 固有, 物質或抽象等名詞之用如普通名詞者 (即變為普通名詞), 厥有二法 (a) 置一冠詞 ("a" 或 "the") 於固有, 物質, 抽象等名詞之前. (b) 變固, 物質有, 抽象等名詞為複數.

*Proper Noun.**Common Nouns.*

<p><i>Daniel</i> was a learned Jew. (<u>大呢爾</u>是一博學猶太人)</p>	{	<p>A <i>Daniel</i> come to judgment. (有名裁判官來裁判)</p> <p>There are more <i>Daniels</i> than one. (有多裁判官不止一人)</p>
---	---	--

Material Noun.

<p><i>Mango</i> is my favourite fruit. (<u>芒果</u>是余寵愛之菓)</p>	{	<p>Give me <i>the mango</i> in your hand. (汝手中之<u>芒果</u>請與我罷)</p> <p>Give me one of your <i>mangoes</i>. (汝的<u>芒果</u>請與一於余)</p>
--	---	---

Abstract Noun.

<p><i>Justice</i> is a noble quality. (<u>正直</u>是高尙之性質)</p>	{	<p>He is <i>a justice</i> of peace. (他是<u>治安</u>判事)</p> <p>There are four <i>justices</i> present. (四位判事出席)</p>
---	---	---

試指出下文各名詞之種類及其用法:—

(1) Alexander the Great, king of Macedon, was conqueror of Persia. (2) A man ignorant of the arts of reading, writing and ciphering is, in point of knowledge, more like a child than a man. (3) The proper study of mankind is man. (2) Cows are as fond of grass as men are of milk, or bears of honey. (5) Health is one of the greatest blessings that a

man or woman can hope to enjoy in this bodily existence.

(6) The Czar of Russia, although he is lord of the eastern half of Europe and the northern half of Asia, besides being master of a huge army and a large fleet, cannot live in peace and safety with his own subjects, and cannot leave his own palace without fear. (7) Arjun was the bravest of the Pándavas. (8) Kálidás was the Homer of India ; but his fame is not so widely known throughout the world as that of Homer is. (9) Almost every Hindu belongs to some caste ; but the bondage of rules founded on caste is in a state of decline. (10) A shower of rain does not give so much trouble to a traveller as a fall of snow. (11) The eleven of our school defeated an eleven selected from among the best cricketers of the town. (12) Most kinds of food are not conducive to health, unless they are mixed with a certain amount of salt. (13) The love of money is the root of all evil ; but by a proper use of money men can do much good. (14) He has done me so many kindnesses, that I shall always remember his name with gratitude. (15) Cleon is justice by rank and office, but he is not a genius in the science of law. (16) Speech is one of the highest faculties with which man is endowed ; but speech without goodness and purity may prove an evil rather than a blessing to its possessor. (17) Daniel was a Jewish prophet. (18) He is a Daniel in foresight. (16) By the waters of Babylon we sat down and

wept. (20) There is no slate in the rocks of these hills.
 (21) Give him the slate. (22) Witchcraft is the art practised
 by a witch or wizard. (23) Fair Science frowned not on his
 humble birth, but melancholy marked him for her own.

譯 解

(答案見後表)

1. 馬其頓王亞力山大大王，是波斯之征服者也。
2. 暗於讀書，寫字，算數等學之人，若自智識之點而論之，與其謂彼為大人，毋寧謂彼近於小孩子尚為適當。
3. 人類之正常研究者，人是也。
4. 牛之嗜草，與人之嗜乳，熊之嗜蜂蜜同。
5. 健康者，人無論男女，皆於浮世間可得望而樂享之最大福之一也。
6. 俄羅斯皇帝雖其為昔羅巴東半部及亞細亞北半部之君主。然除其巨大之陸軍與強大之海軍外，則不能與其自國之臣民共處於平和及安全之樂。且不能出宮城之外寸步，而可免危險之虞。
7. 亞爭是不打畏人中之最大勇者也。
8. 加利達撒是印度之荷馬，但其名聲不似荷馬之名聲洋溢於世界之廣耳。
註、Kalides 印度之詩人，Homer 希臘之詩人，皆有名之詩人也。
9. 印度人雖多屬於族階（印度人民有種種之階級），但本於族階所設之各種規則之束縛，今已在漸漸衰頹之現象矣。
10. 降雨是不似降雪之妨害行人之甚。
11. 我學校之十一人隊，打敗由市中選拔最精打毬者之十一人隊。
12. 大抵食物非混和多分之鹽，則無益於衛生。
13. 嗜愛金錢者，諸惡之基也。雖然，若人之使用金錢於適當，則獲多數之利益。
14. 彼已極惠愛於余，故余時時想起彼之名，則必起感謝彼之心。
15. 哥薩雖其官職是判官，但其非優於法學之人。
16. 辯論之才者，吾人天賦最高能力中之一也。雖然，若缺善意與高尚之辯論。而有之之人，與其謂之為福，毋寧謂之為禍。

24 IDIOM AND GRAMMAR FOR MIDDLE SCHOOLS.

17. 大呢爾是猶太之預言者。
18. 彼是有先知之大呢爾。
19. 巴比崙諸流，我等坐之而泣。
20. 此小山之石無石板。
21. 給石板於彼。
22. 妖術者，使妖術之男女所行之術也。
23. 秀美學問之女神，雖不嫌其微賤，但沈鬱之女神，則著眼他同其所屬。此見 Gray 悲歌碑文中之句，其意即云「彼雖幸接學問之光，但生于微賤，故沈思憂鬱，是其性質也」。

答 案 表

<i>Proper.</i>	<i>Common.</i>	<i>Collective.</i>	<i>Material.</i>	<i>Abstract.</i>
(1) Alexander	(1) King	(3) mankind	(4) grass	(2) writing*
(1) Macedon	(1) Conqueror	(6) army	(4) milk	(2) reading*
(1) Persia	(2) Man	(6) fleet	(4) honey	(2) cipherings*
(6) Russia	(2) Arts	(9) castè	(10) rain	(2) knowledge
(6) Europe	(抽象名詞而用於 普通名詞)	10) shower	(10) snow	(3) study
(6) Asia	(2) point	10) fall	(11) food	(5) health
(7) Arjun	(2) child	(11) eleven	(12) salt	(5) existence
(8) Kálidás	(3) man	(11) eleven	(20) slate	(6) peace
(8) India	(4) Cows			(6) safety
(8) Homer	(3) bears			(6) fear
(9) Hindu	(5) blessings			(8) fame
(15) Cleon	(抽象名詞而用於 普通名詞)			(9) bondage
(17) Daniel	(5) man			(9) state
(19) Babylon	(5) woman			(9) decline
(23) Science (抽象名詞而用於 固有名詞)	(6) Czar (固有名詞而用於 普通名詞)			(10) trouble
	(6) lord			(12) health
	(5) half			(13) love
	(6) half			(13) use
	(6) master			(14) gratitude
	(6) Subjects			(15) rank
	(6) palace			(15) office
	(6) pándaves (固有名詞而用於 普通名詞)			(15) science
	(8) the Homer (固有名詞而用於 普通名詞)			(16) speech
	(8) world			(16) faculties
	(9) rules			(16) sheep
	(10) traveller			(16) goodness
	(11) school			(16) purity, foresight
	(11) cricketers			(22) witchcraft
	(11) town			(22) art
	(12) kinds			(23) birth
	(12) amount			
	(13) money			
	(13) root			
	(13) evil			
	(13) money			
	(13) Good			
	(14) kindnesses (抽象名詞用於普 通名詞)			
	(14) name			
	(15) a justice (抽象名詞用於普 通名詞)			
	(15) a genius (抽象名詞用於普 通名詞)			
	(15) law			
	(16) man			
	(16) a blessing (抽象名詞用於普 通名詞)			
	(16) evil			
	(16) possessor			
	(16) prophet (固有名詞用於普 通名詞)			
	(19) waters (物質名詞用於普 通名詞)			
	(20) rocks			
	(20) hills			
	(21) the slate			
	(22) witch			
	(22) wizard			

* 動名詞形之抽象名詞

§ 2 章二. SUBSTITUTES FOR A NOUN.

名詞之代用辭

47. 下所舉諸種之辭或辭之結合者,皆可為名詞之代用辭
(參照 § 22 § 24):—

(a) 代名詞:—

Your horse is white; mine is a black *one* (=horse).

(君之馬是白色; 吾之馬是黑色)

(b) 形容詞用為名詞或用為添附於省畧名詞:—

The just (=justice) is higher than *the expedient* (=expediency). (公直是高尙於自私)

The blind (men) receive their sight.

(盲人受其視覺)

前例是用為名詞, 後例是用為添附於省畧名詞.

(c) 無定法之動詞:—

He desires *to succeed* (=success). (彼望成功)

(d) 動名詞:—

He was fond of *sleeping* (=slees). (彼是好睡)

(e) 句:—

No one knew *how to do this* (=the method of doing this). (無人知辦此事之方法)

(f) 名詞節, 即節而有名詞之効用者 (參照節之定義 § 5):—

Who steals my purse (=the stealer of my purse) steals *trahs.* (彼盜余之銀包者盜物屑耳)

§ 3 章三. GENDER 性

48. 文字而天然有男女性之別者, 文法上謂之性 Gender. 文法上之所謂性別者表如下:—

- (1) 示男性動物之名詞謂之陽性 Masculine.
- (2) 示女性動物之名詞謂之陰性 Feminine.
- (3) 通示男女兩性動物之名詞謂之通性 Common.
- (4) 示無性事物之名詞(即無生命物)謂之中性 Neuter.

49. 物質名詞及抽象名詞其所表之事物皆無生命物(即死物), 故可定之為中性. 集合名詞其所表者為成群或群之無生命物, 故亦可定之為中性. 是以名詞依其性而類別之, 其法如下:—

<i>Gender.</i>	<i>Nouns.</i>
Masculine or Feminine. 陽性或陰性	{ Proper and Common Nouns. 固有及普通名詞
Common (or Either Gender.) 通性(即或性)	
Neuter (or Neither Gender). 中性(即無性)	{ Common Nouns. 普通名詞 { Proper Nouns 固有名詞 Common „ 普通 „ Collective „ 集合 „ Material „ 物質 „ Abstract „ 抽象 „

50. 由陽性而區別出陰性, 厥有三法:—

- I. 變其全字; 如 *bull* (牡牛), *Cow* (牝牛).
- II. 附加一字於他字; 如 *he-goat* (牡山羊), *she-goat* (牝山羊).

III. 附加 *ess* 於陽性字之末；如 *priest* (僧), *priestess* (尼).

I. 變其全字

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Bachelor 未娶男	maid or spinster 未婚女	Man 男	woman 女
Boar 猪公	sow 猪母	Miltter (fish) 雄魚	spawner 雌魚
Boy 男童	girl 女童	Nephew 姪子	niece 姪女
Brother 兄弟	sister 姊妹	Papa 父	mamma 母
Buck 牡小鹿	doe 牝小鹿	Ram (or wether) 牡羊	ewe 牝羊
Bull (or ox) 牡牛	cow 牝牛	Sir 先生	madam 夫人
Bullock (or steer) 牡犏	heifer 牝犏	Sire (father of colt) 馬之父	dam (mother of colt) 馬之母
Cock 鷄公	hen 鷄母	Sloven 懶惰男	slut 懶惰女
Colt 牡小馬	filly 牝小馬	Son 子	daughter 女
Dog 牡犬	bitch (or slut) 牝犬	Father 父	mother 母
Drake 鴨公	duck 鴨母	Friar (or monk) 僧	nun 尼
Drone 雄蜂	bee 雌蜂	Gander 鵝公	goose 鵝母
Earl 伯爵	countess 伯爵夫人	Gentleman 紳士	lady 貴女
Horse (or stallion) 牡馬	mare 牝馬	Hart 牡鹿	roe 牝鹿
Husband 夫	wife 婦	Stag 牡鹿	hind 牝鹿
King 王	queen 女皇	Swain 田舍男	nymph 田舍女
Lord 貴人	lady 貴女	Uncle 伯父, 叔父	aunt 伯母, 叔母
		Wizard 使魔術男	witch 使魔術女

II. 附加一字於他字

(a) 附加添首語

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Billy-goat 牡山羊	nanny-goat 牝山羊	He-goat 牡山羊	she-goat 牝山羊
Buck-rabbit 牡兔	doe-rabbit 牝兔	Jack-ass 牡驢	she-ass 牝驢
Cock-sparrow 雄雀	hen-sparrow 雌雀	Man-servant 僕	maid-servant 婢

(b) 附加添尾語

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Femtnine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Grand-father 祖父	grand-mother 祖母	Pea-cock 雄孔雀	pea-hen 雌孔雀
Great-uncle 曾伯 叔父	great-aunt 曾伯叔 母	Servant-man 僕	servant-maid 婢
Land-lord 男地主	land-lady 女地主	Washer-man 洗衣 郎	wash-erwoman 洗 衣婦

III. 附加 *ess* 於陽性字之末(a) 附 *ess* 於兩陽性而並不變其形：一

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Author 男著者	author-ess 女著者	Peer 男貴族	peer-ess 女貴族
Baron 男爵	baron ess 男爵夫人	Poet 男詩人	poet-ess 女詩人
Count 伯爵	count ess 伯爵夫人	Priest 僧	priest-ess 尼
Giant 巨男人	giant-ess 巨女人	Prince 太子	princ-ess 公主
God 神人	godd-ess 神女	Prior 男教會長	prior-ess 女教會長
Heir 嗣子	heir-ess 嗣女	Prophet 男預言者	prophet-ess 女預 言者
Host 男主人	host-ess 女主人	Shepherd 牧童	shepherd-ess 牧女
Jew 猶太男人	jew-ess 猶太女人	Viscount 子爵	viscount-ess 子爵 夫人
Lion 牡獅	lion-ess 牝獅		
Patron 男恩人	patron-ess 女恩人		

(b) 加 *ess* 於陽性字而刪其最後之母音：一

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Actor 男優	actr-ess 女優	Hunter 男獵者	huntr-ess 女獵者
Benefactor 男恩人	benefactr-ess 女恩	Instructor 男教授	instructr-ess 女教 者 授者
Conductor 掌車人, 指導者	conductr-ess 女掌 車人	Negro 男黑人	negr-ess 女黑人
Director 男管理	directr-ess 女管理	Porter 男擔夫	portr-ess 女擔夫
Enchanter 男妖 術者	enchantr-ess 女妖 術者	Songster 歌男	songstr-ess 歌女
		Tempter 男誘惑者	temptr-ess 女誘惑 者

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Tiger 牡虎	tigr-ess 牝虎	Votary 男發願者	votar-ess 女發願者
Traitor 叛男	traitr-ess 叛女		

(c) 比前述之各種類為稍不規則，而加 *ess* 於陽性字：—

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Abbot 男院長	abbess 女院長	Master (boy) 少男之敬稱	miss (girl) 少女未 婚之敬稱「敬稱
Duke 公爵	duchess 公爵夫人	Mr. 男之敬稱	mrs. 婦人之(已婚)
Emperor 皇帝	ampress 皇后	Marquis } 侯爵	marchioness } 侯爵 夫人
Governor 男統轄者	governess 女統轄	Marquess }	
Lad 男童	lass 女童 [者	Murderer 男兇手	murderess 女兇手
Master (teacher) 男 教師	mistress 女教師	Sorcerer 男魔術者	sorceress 女魔術者

51. 下文所引之陰陽性區別法是為例外：—

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Bridegroom 新郎	bride 新婦	Fox 牡狐	vixen 牝狐
Widower 寡夫	widow 寡婦	(以 vixen 為 fox 之陰性今已廢用)	

52. Foreign Feminines 外國語之陰性：—

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Administrator 男管理者	administratrix 女管理者
Beau 美少年	beille 美少女
Czar 俄國皇帝	czarina 俄國皇后
Don 西班牙男子之敬稱	donna 西班牙女子之敬稱
Executor 男受托者	executrix 女受托者
Hero 男英雄	heroine 女英雄
Prosecutor 男實行者	prosecutrix 女實行者
Signor 伊太利男子之敬稱	signora 伊太利女子之敬稱
Sultan 土耳其皇帝	sultana 土耳其皇后
Testator 男遺言者	testatrix 女遺言者

53. Double Feminines 複陰性：——此種僅有兩字：一

Songstress (女唱歌者). *seamstress* (裁縫女).

原來 *ster* 是為陰性之語尾加添字，如今僅存之 “*spinster*” 是也。但如 “*songster*” 及 “*seamster*” 之 “*ster*,” 其示陰性之効力早已全失，故今陰性之成形，但變 “*er*” 為 “*ress*” 耳。

54. 通性名詞之例；列舉於下：一

Parent 親—father or mother.

Relation 親戚—male or female relation.

Friend 友—enemy 讐敵—male or female friend or enemy.

Cousin 從兄弟—male or female.

Bird 鳥—cock or hen.

Peafowl 孔雀—peacock or peahen.

Fowl 禽—cock or hen.

Child 兒童—boy or girl son or daughter.

Deer 鹿—stag or hind.

Fallow-deer 小鹿—buck or doe.

Baby (or infant) 嬰兒—male or female baby (or infant).

Servant 使役—man-servant or maid-servant.

Momarch 君王—king or queen emperor or empress.

Person 人—man or woman.

Pupil 生徒—boy student or girl student.

Orphan 孤兒—boy or girl without parents.

Pig 豚—boar or sow.

Sheep 羊—ram or ewe.

Elephant 象—male or female elephant.

Cat 貓—male or female cat.

Rat 鼠—male or female rat.

Mouse 小鼠—male or female mouse.

- Fox 狐—m $\frac{2}{3}$ or female fo $\frac{2}{4}$
 Cattle 牛—cows alone or cows and bulls mixed.
 Swine 豚—sows alone or sows and boars mixed.
 Spouse 配偶—husband or wife.
 Foal 駒—bolt or filly.
 Calf 犢—bullock or heifer.

55. 陽性名詞及陰性名詞，雖其各具有特別之形，以爲分陽分陰，但其所示之動物，無足以起分陽分陰之疑者，則可直用通性名詞；如一 *dog, duck, horse, bee, goose, colt.*

That is a fine little *colt.* (—美小駒)

That *horse* of yours is splendid stepper.

(汝之馬是美蹄的)

A *goose* is a much bigger bird than a *duck.*

(鵝是大於鴨之禽)

56. **Personified Things 擬人事物**：——無生氣事物或性質而用於恰如言有體之人者，謂之擬人事物（參照 § 45）。此等名詞亦認爲有陽性陰性之別。

凡名詞而用於擬人者，其字之起端一字母，亦如固有名詞而寫頭文字。

通例認剛強 (strength), 廣大 (greatness), 高尚 (superiority) 等事物爲陽性；如 the Sun (太陽), Summer (夏), June (六月), Winter (冬), the Dawn (曙), the morn (朝早), Death (死), War (戰), Majesty (威嚴)。

反是，而用抽象名詞所表之性質或狀態；如美麗 (beauty), 豐饒 (fertility), 優雅 (grace), 劣等 (inferiority), 及其他同樣者；認爲陰性；如 the Earth (地球), Spring (春), Hope (希望), Virtue (德), Truth (真理), Justice (公直), Mercy (慈悲)。

Charity (仁慈), Humility (謙遜), Peace (和平), Jealousy (妒忌), Pride (驕), Fame (名譽), Modesty (禮節), Liberty (自由), Flattery (諂諛), 等。The Moon 亦認為陰性, 蓋其是劣光體, 本體無光, 借太陽之光以為光之故也。

擬人名詞本無形可以區別其性, 惟有 she 或 he 之代名詞而代稱其名詞時, 可以依之而知其性耳。

至於 “ship” 雖常不用頭文字, 但常用於女性而以 she 稱之, “railway train” 亦然。

§ 4 章四. CASE 位

57. **Case Defined 位之定義**：——名詞為示對於文中之他辭之關係, 或示此關係之形之變化者謂之位 Case.

58. 英文有三位之變化：—

The Nominative 主位. The Possessive 領位.

The Objective. 賓位.

但現今此三位中而有字尾之變化者惟領位耳, 其他兩位已無之。惟於文法上之關係以區別之而已。

59. 名詞而用為動詞之主辭 (subject) 或稱呼 (address) 時, 此名詞是謂之主位 Nominative Case.

Rain falls (動詞之主辭)

Are you coming, my friend? (稱呼之主辭)

60. 名詞而用於動詞或前置詞之賓辭 (object) 時, 謂之賓位 Objective Case.

The man killed a rat. (動詞之賓辭)

(其人殺一鼠)

The earth is moistened by rain. (前置詞之賓辭)

(地球爲雨所濕)

61 領位者，表所有主或領主也。名詞之成此形，俱加 's (名省略點 apostrophe s) 於其字末；如：—

單數——man's. | 複數——men's.

備考。一往昔名詞之成領位者，爲加“es”於其字尾，但“e”現今已廢用，其已廢用之“e,”則加句讀點卽省略點's以爲記號；如 moon, moones, moon's.

62. 常例固加 's 於字末以成領位之形，但於此有三種用法而省却 's:—

(a) 一切複數名詞最後而已有 s 者；如：—

Horses' tails (馬之尾)；the birds' nests (鳥之巢)；the dogs' kennels (狗之屋).

(b) 單數名詞最後之併音，其起端及極端而有 s 者；如：—

Moses' laws (莫塞之法律) 然設云「宛呢之美麗」「惹米斯之帽」又不可不寫爲「Venus's beauty；James's hat」

(c) 單數名詞最後之併音爲 s 或 ce, 且此名詞之次位是爲 sake 所接續者；如：—

Conscience' sake (良心之爲)；for goodness sake (好意之爲)「然設云「鼠之皮」「惹米斯之微笑」又不可不寫爲 mouse's skin, James's smile.」

63. 名詞所表之無生命物體，是無所謂領位；如：—
“house's roof” (屋之蓋)；“the town's street” (城之街)；“garden's fruit” (園之菓)；“Bengal's seaport” (板格耳之海港)；“human

life's brevity" (人類生活之短時期)；"the cottage's door(茅舍之門)"
等，亦不得認爲領位。

此等名詞若欲用之或領位時，惟可用前置詞之“of”而表示之，否亦要用之如形容詞。

The flowers of summer = the summer flowers. (夏之花)

The door of cottage = the cottage door. (茅舍之門)

The light of a lamp = a lamp light. (燈之光)

46 領位之所領者，往昔亦嘗對於各種名詞而皆可用，但現今稍有限制。試舉如下：—

(1) 表人類之名詞；如：—

Gopal's book (哥巴爾書)；a man's foot (人之足)；(但不能，

云“a library's book,” (文庫之書)，“the mountain's foot,”

(山之麓)。蓋此“library”與“mountain”是無生命物也。

(2) 表人類以外諸種有生命物之名詞，如：—

A cat's tail；a horse's head；a bird's feathers. (鳥之羽)

(3) 表擬人事物之詞；如：—

Fortune's favourite (幸運之寵愛)；Sorrow's tears (悲哀之淚)；

England's heroes. (英國之英雄)。

(4) 表時間 (time)，空間 (space)，重量 (weight) 之名詞
如：—

時間。— A day's journey (一日之行程)；a month's holiday

(一月之休息)；three week's leave (三禮拜之別離)；a

year's absence (一年之不在)；At six month's sight

(在六個月一覽 = 就票券之支給而言)；Three days' grace

(三日間之恩惠猶讓 = 就支給事而言)。

空間 — A boat's length (一小艇之長度)，a hand's breadth

(片手之廣); a *hair's breadth* (一髮之隙); *razor's edge* (剃刀邊之隙); a *stone's throw* (一石投到之距離); *needle's point* (一針鋒之隙).

重量.—A *pound's weight* (一磅之重量); a *ton's weight* (一噸重量).

(5) 表尊嚴事物之名詞; 如:—

The *court's decree* (裁判所之命令); the *sun's rays* (太陽之光線); the *moon's crescent* (月之新狀); *nature's works* (造化之工用); the *earth's creatures* (地球之動物); the *soul's delight* (靈魂之快樂); *heaven's will* (天之意思); the *law's delays* (法律之猶豫); *truth's triumph* (真理之凱旋); the *mind's eye* (心之眼); the *ocean's roar* (大洋之怒嘯); *duty's call* (義務之召喚); the *river's bank* (河之岸); the *country's good* (國家之利益).

備考.—有少數常用之句, 因欲令其構造之簡便, 故亦用於領位:—

Out of *harm's* away (免於危害之途); at his *wit's* end (盡其伎倆之極); for *mercy's* sake (爲慈悲); he did it to his *heart's* content (他照其心思而爲); the *ship's* passengers (乘船客); at his *finger's* ends (自由或貧困); he get to his *journey's* end (彼已達其行程之地點); the *boat's* crew (艇之水手).

Possessive Case in Apposition 同▲之續○:—時而領位與他之領位同位者 (§ 19), 則省畧點's 宜附於最後之名詞.

Herod married his *brother Philip's* wife.

(希羅特娶其兄弟菲之妻以爲妻)

66. **Possessive in Phrase 領位之句**：——凡一句而當作混合名詞看，且爲表一人或多數之人者，若用其成領位形時，宜附 's 於最後一字（混合名詞即兩個以上之名詞合而爲一之謂）如：—

The government of India's order. (印度政府之命令)

My son-in-law's house. (余婿之家)

The Duke of Sutherland's death. (蘇打蘭公爵之死)

67. **"of" before a Possessive 領位前之 "of."**——屬於此種之用法，其句如 "That book of James's," that handsome face of my father's, 從來有三種之解法；(1) "of my father's" 者，"of my father's faces" 之畧也，此 "faces" 是 "of" 之賓辭云。此解法是爲文法上之至當者，然令其文全無意味。(2) "of my father's" 者，複領位者也，此說較爲近理。(3) "of" 者，單表同位也；如 "the continent of Asia," 其意即「此大陸即亞細亞」耳。故 "that face of my father's" 者，其亦即「此面即吾父之面」之意。

"of" 之用法不明時，而置領位名詞於其後時，則其用意自無曖昧。故 "a picture of queen" 即是「畫女皇之像之圖畫」之意，若云 "a picture of queen's," 則爲「女皇所有之圖畫」之意矣。

63. 領位名詞所領者爲地方或建築物時，則此等物名，可省畧於其領主之次。

I will see you at the barber's (shop 字畧).

(余將在理髮店見汝)

We found him studying hard at his tutor's (house 字略).

(我等見彼勤學於其師之家)

§ 5 章五. NUMBER 數

69. 名詞之表一事物者謂之單數 Singular; 其表兩事物以上者謂之複數 Plural.

若嚴格論之, 名詞之可以認為有複數之効用者, 惟普通與集合兩種名詞耳. 至固有, 物質, 抽象等名詞而欲用於複數時, 必其用之如複數而後可 (§ 46).

70. 名詞而成複數形時, 以附加 *s* 於單數名詞之末是為原則; 如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Hand 手	hands		House 屋	houses

但單數名詞之字末為 *s*, *x*, *she*, 或 *ch*, 其成複數之形, 又宜附加之以 *es*; 如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Glass 玻璃杯	glass-es		Brush 刷	brush-es
Box 箱	box-es		Bench 長凳	bench-es

71. 單數名詞之字末為 *y*, 且 *y* 之前為子音 (consonant), 其成複數之形, 須變 *y* 為 *ies* 如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Duty 義務	duties		Army 軍隊	armies
Fly 蠅	flies		Lady 貴女	ladies

但其 *y* 之前是母音如 *ay*, *ey*, *oy*, 者, 其成複數之形, 可仍照 § 70 之原則而附加 *s*; 如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Day 日	days		Key 鑰匙	keys
Monkey 猴	monkeys		Toy 玩具	toys
Play 遊戲	plays		Boy 童子	boys

備考。一名詞之字末爲“*quy*,”其成複數之形,則爲*ies*。何以故,蓋*qu*(=*kw*)作重子音看也;如*colloquy*, *colloquies*。

72. 名詞之字末爲*o*,且*o*之前爲子音,則複數之成形,大概加*es*於單數;如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Cargo 成車貨物	cargoes	Mango 芒果	mango
Hero 英雄	heroes	Potato 荷蘭薯	potatoes
Buffalo 水牛	buffaloes	Echo 返響向	echoes
Motto 題目	mottoes	Tornado	tornadoes
Negro 黑人	negroes	Volcano 火山	volcano

但一切名詞之字末爲*oo*或*io*,*eo*及*yo*,又或有*o*之前爲子音,則複數之成形,是單加*s*而非加*es*;如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Bamboo 竹	bamboos	Grotto 巖窟	grottos
Cuckoo 杜鵑	cuckoos	Halo 日月之暈	halos
Portfolio 紙夾	portfolios	Memento 暗號	mementoes
Embryo(有機物之胎)	embryos	Proviso 條項	provisos
Cameo 寶石之名	cameos	Seraglio 土耳其之宮殿	seraglios
Tiro 初學者	tiros	Piano 大琴	pianos
Hindoo 印度人	hindoos	Canto 歌	cantos
Curio 珍奇	curios	Solo 單歌	solos

於此亦有少數之名詞字末爲*o*其成複數之形,於*s*與*es*兩者可用之如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Calio 白洋布	calicos or calicoes
Mosquito 蚊	mosquitos or mosquitoes
Portico 前廊	Portico or porticoes

73. 名詞之字末爲 *f* 或 *fe*, 其成複數之形, 大都變 *f* 或 *fe* 爲 *evs*; 如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wife 妻	wives	Calf 犢	calves
Knife 小刀	knives	Half 半	halves
Life 命	lives	Myself 自己	ourselves
Sheaf 束, 把	sheaves	Shelf 棚, 架	shelves
Leaf 葉	leaves	Wolf 狼	wolves
Thief 盜	thieves	Elf 侏儒	elves

但亦有名詞字末爲 *f* 其成複數之形, 單加 *s* 於單數 (如加 *s* 之通例); 如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Reef 暗礁	reefs	Wharf 泊船所	wharfs
Chief 首長	chiefs	Dwarf 矮人	dwarfs
Roof 屋, 蓋	roofs	Turf 泥炭	turfs
Hoof 蹄	hoofs	Gulf 灣	gulfs
Proof 證據	proofs	Cliff 絕壁	cliffs
Scarf 肩巾, 搭膊巾	scarfs	Grief 悲歌	griefs

於此更有三個名詞之字末爲 *fe*, 其成複數之形, 亦單加 *s*; 如:—

<i>Singular.</i> —safe 安全, 穩妥.	strife 競爭.	fife 笛.
<i>Plural.</i> —safes.	strifes.	fifes.

74. 於此有八個名詞, 爲變其內部之母音而成複數之形; 如:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Man 男人	men	Tooth 牙齒	teeth
Woman 婦人	women	Louse 虱	lice
Foot 足	feet	Mouse 小鼠	mice
Goose 鵞	geese	Dormouse 野鼠	dormice

更有四個名詞成複數之形於 *en* 或 *ne* ; 如 :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Ox 牡牛	oxen
Child 小孩子	children
Brother 兄弟	brethern (or brothers)
Cow 牝牛	kine (or cows)

75. 混合名詞之複數之形，大都加 *s* 於其主要辭；*如：—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Father-in-law 岳父	fathers-in-law
Son-in-law 女婿	sons-in-law
Mother-in-law 岳母	mothers-in-law
Daughter-in-law 媳婦	daughters-in-law
Step-son 繼子	step-sons
Step-daughter 繼女	step-daughters
Hanger-on 食客	hangers-on
Looker-on 傍觀者	lookers-on
Maid-servant 女僕	maid-servants
Foot-man 步兵	foot-men
Washer-man 浣衣人	washer-men
Knight-errant 巡行之武士	knights-errant
Coat-of-mail 鎧	coats-of-mail
Court-martial 軍事裁判所	courts-marstial
Commander-in-chief 元帥	commanders-in-chief
Passer-by 傍行者	passers-by

於此有四個混合名詞，而成雙複數。雙複數者，複數名詞而更加以複數也；如：—

* 主要辭構造混合名詞數語中有最主要之意義也；如：father-in-law 則 father 比 in-law 爲主要。

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Man-servant 男僕	men-servants
Woman-servant 婢	women-servant
Kinght-Templar 宗教武士	Knight-Templars
Lord-justice 高等法院長	Lord-justices

此例之“men-servants”之servants, 既是複數之形矣, 而尚混以“men”複數之形. 此其所謂之雙複數也.

如連用句中有所謂“Miss Brown”者, 其成複數之形有二法; 云“the Miss Browns”亦可, 云“the Misses Brown”亦無不可.

76. Foreign Plurals 外國語之複數: —— 外國語複數者, 直由外國借來之名詞而用為複數也.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
拉丁 (LATIN)		拉丁 (LATIN)	
Agendum 備忘錄	agenda	Genius 英才	genii
Addendum 附錄	addenda	Radius 半徑	radii
Datum 定說	data	Termious 境界	termini (or terminuses)
Dictum 判定詞	dicta	Formula 法式	formulae (or formulas)
Effluvium 臭氣	effluvia	Genus 種, 類	genera
Ovum 卵	ova	Axis 軸	axes
Erratum 誤字	errata	Index 索引, 目錄	indices
Memorandum 備忘錄	memoranda	Appendix 附錄	appendices
Medium 媒介物	media	Series 連續	series
Stratum 層, 地層	strata (or stratums)	Species 種, 類	species
Alumnus 學生或卒業生	alumni [ses]	Apparatus 裝置, 器具	apparatus
Focus 焦點	foci (or focu-	Stamen 雄蕊	stamina
Fungus 菌	fungi	Basis 基礎	basse

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
希臘 (GREEK)		法蘭西 (FRENCH)	
Analysis 解剖	analyses	Beau 美少年	beaux (or beaus)
Basis (基礎)	bases	Bureau 官衙, 衣櫃	bureaux
Crisis 危急	crises	Monsieur 男之敬稱	messieurs
Hypothesis 假說	hypotheses	Madam 夫人	madames
Oasis 沙漠中之肥地	oases	希伯來 (HDBREW)	
Parenthesis 括弧	parentheses	Cherub 天使	cherubim (or cherubs)
Thesis 題目	theses	Seraph 天使	seraphim (or seraphs)
Phenomenon 顯象	phenomena		
Criterion 規矩	criteria		
伊太利 (ITALIAN) [bandits]			
Bandit 山賊, 匪類	banditti (or		

77. 名詞有本為單數之形, 而常用於複數之意義者; 如:—

Cattle 家畜.—*These cattle are mine.*

(此等家畜是我的)

Vermin 虫.—*These vermine do much harm.*

(此等虫好生利害)

Swine 豚.—*These swine must be kept out of the garden.*

(此等豚須放之於園之外)

People 人民.—*These people have returned home.*

(此等人已回家)

備考.—*People* 而用於國民的意義, 其複數之形為 *peoples*.

78. 名詞有不全用於複數. 至或用在複數時, 則別有一種之意義; 如:—

Abuse 責罵.—*He gave me much abuse (reproach) for no fault.* (他無故責罵我好多)

Information 智識.—*He gave me all the information he had.*

(他與我好多智識)

Alphabet 字母.—He learnt the alphabet before he could read. (他未能讀書以前已先學字母)

Furniture 家具.—His house is full of good furniture. (他之屋滿置好多家具)

Offspring 子.—These four children are my offspring. (此四個童子是余之子)

Poetry 詩.—He wrote very good poetry (poems). (他作好詩)

Scenery 景色.—These hills are lovely scenery. (此等小丘之景是令人可愛)

Issue 小兒.—He had no issue (child or children). (他無兒子)

Folk 人民.—The old have gone. (老人去矣)

備考.—“Abuse” 爲用於 wrong use (誤用) 之意義時，其複數之形則爲 “abuses.” “alphabet” 用於兩國以上之國語時，其複數之形則爲 “alphabets.” “issue” 爲用於 result (結果) 之意義時，其複數之形則爲 “issues.”

79. 名詞有一形而可通用於單數及複數者；如：—

(a) <i>Name of animals.</i> (動物名)	(b) <i>Nouns of Numbers.</i> (員數名)	(c) <i>Weight and Money.</i> (重量及貨幣)
Deer 鹿	Yoke (of oxen) 牛軛	Stone ¹ (weight) 重量之名稱
Sheep 羊	Brace (of birds) 一對	Hundred weight 百磅之重量
Fish (罕云 fishes) 魚	Dozen 十二	Pice ² 貨幣之名
Heathen 釋教之人	Score 二十	

— stone 爲十四磅，但亦因品物而異，獸肉魚肉八磅稱一 stone 乾酪十六磅稱一 stone,

2. Pice 東印度之小銅貨，比於我國之一仙零。

This deer. These *deer* (複數). That sheep. Those *sheep* (複數). That fish, those *fish* (複數云 fishes 則稀). Those *heathen* (複數). Nine *brace* (複數) of birds (九對之禽). Four *yoke* (複數) of oxen (四聯之牛). Ten *dozen* (複數) books. Three *score* (複數) men (六十人). He weight *ten stone* (複數) and a half (彼重十斯頓半). That box weighs three *hundredweight* (複數, 其箱重三百磅). Three *piece* (複數).

80. 名詞有並不變其單數之形,而可以成普通複數之形以表特別之分量或數者.

A *ten-rupee note*¹ (十盧鄙之貨幣). A *twelve-month*. A *three-foot rule* (三尺規). An *eight-day clock* (八日旋一回鍊之時計). A *six-year old horse* (六歲之馬). A *fortnight* (二禮拜). *Forty head* of cattle (四十頭之畜). *Twelve pound weight* (十二磅之重量).

81. 名詞有以一形而成兩形之複數者,因其用之不同,其意義亦由是各異.

<i>Brother</i>	{	Brothers. 同母之兄弟
	{	Brothren. 同社會之兄弟
<i>Cloth</i>	{	Cloths. 布之數種或布之數片
	{	Clothes. 衣類
<i>Die</i>	{	Dies. 貨幣之印模
	{	Dice. 色子
<i>Genius</i>	{	Genuses. 英才, 俊傑
	{	Genii. 空中之怪魔

1. rupee 東印度之銀貨幣, 約與我國六角五分相當, 十五 rupees 為一 mohur 之金貨

2. Fortnight fourteen night 之縮寫.

<i>Index</i>	}	Indexes. 目錄
		Indices 代數學之指數
<i>Staff</i>	}	staves. 杖棒
		staffs. 幕僚, 參謀部
<i>Shots</i>	}	shot. 彈丸
		shots. 發射數, 如 "he had two shots."

(他發射兩次)

82. 名詞有分爲單數複數時而全異其意義者：一

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Advice</i> , counsel 商議	<i>Advices</i> , information 知識
<i>Beef</i> , flesh of ox 牛肉	<i>Beeves</i> , cattle, bulls and cows 牛類
<i>Compass</i> , range or extent 境界	<i>Compasses</i> , an instrument 兩脚規
<i>Good</i> , benefit 利益	<i>Goods</i> , movable property 動產
<i>Iron</i> , a metal 鐵	<i>Irons</i> , fetter made of iron 桎梏
<i>Physic</i> , medicine 藥劑	<i>Physics</i> , Natural Science 物理學
<i>Return</i> , coming back 歸	<i>Returns</i> , statistic 統計表
<i>Vesper</i> , evening 夕	<i>Vespers</i> , evening prayers 夕之祈禱
<i>Sand</i> , a kind of matter 砂	<i>Sands</i> , a tract of sandy land 砂地
<i>Force</i> , strength or energy 力	<i>Forces</i> , army 軍勢
<i>Air</i> , atmosphere 空氣	<i>Airs</i> , demeanour 容貌, 風采

83. 名詞有用在單數時爲一種之意義, 至用在複數時則備有兩種之意義：一

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Custom</i> 習慣	<i>Customs</i>	
	} 1. Habits 習慣	
		2. Jole or tax 稅
<i>Letter</i> { 1. 字母	} 1. Of alphabet 文字	
2. 書牘		2. Epistles 書牘
		3. <i>Learning</i> 學問

<i>Singular;</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Pain</i> , 苦痛	<i>Pains</i>	{ 1. Sufferings 痛苦 2. <i>Trouble, care</i> 勞心
<i>Effect</i> 結果	<i>Effects</i>	{ 1. Results 結果 2. <i>Goods and chattels</i> 動產
<i>Manner</i> 方法	<i>Manners</i>	{ 1. Modes or ways 方法 2. <i>Behaviour</i> 行狀
<i>Number</i> , 數	<i>Numbers</i>	{ 1. As in counting 數 2. <i>Poetry</i> 詩
<i>Part</i> , 部分	<i>Parts</i> ,.....	{ 1. Portions 部分 2. <i>Abilities</i> 能力
<i>Spectacle</i> , 奇觀	<i>Spectacles</i>	{ 1. Things seem 奇觀 2. <i>Glasses to help the sight</i> 眼鏡
<i>Premise</i> 記述或命題	<i>Premises</i>	{ 1. Propositions 命題 「地 2. <i>Surroundings to a house</i> 屋周圍之
<i>Quarter</i> 四分之一	<i>Quarters</i>	{ 1. Fourth parts 四分之一 2. <i>Lodgings</i> 小屋

§4. 真單數用之如複數.

“真單數”者名詞字末之 *s* 寔爲單數名詞本來之一部分，而非複數之符號之意也。

此名詞照詞學上論之，明是屬於單數。惟因其字末有 *s*；故可當作複數看。是以現今其中有似全被用於複數者有二。

Summons (召喚狀)。——此名詞現今尙用之如單數；如，“I received *a summons* to attend” (余受召喚狀而出席)；“*this summons* reached me to-day” (此召喚狀今日到來於余)。至於其複數之形則爲 *summonses*。

Alms (施物)。——“He asked *an alms*” (他求施物)。此新約書中語是用於單數者，但現今普通用之如複數；如，“I gave

alms to the beggar, and for *these* he thanked me” (余施物於乞食人, 因此彼感謝我)。

Eaves (檐).——此是現今常用之如複數; 如, “The eaves are not yet finished” (檐猶未落成)。

Riches (富).——此字亦是單數如新約書中有語云 “In one hour is so great riches comes naught” (如此巨富, 一時間竟歸烏有); *is* 是用於單數者也. 但以其字末有 *s*, 故常用於複數; 如, “Riches do not last for ever (富不能久享)。

85. 真複數用如單數.

“真複數者,” 其名詞字末之 *s* 真為複數之符號之意也.

Amends (賠償).——此字有時用之如單數或複數; 如, “He made *an* amends” (彼已肯首賠償); 此句用冠詞之 “*an*,” 故知為單數. “I accept *these* amends” (余容納此等賠償). 此句用 “*these*” 之形容詞, 故知為複數.

Means (手段).——此字現今幾常用之如單數; 如, “By *this* means” (依此手段). 此句用形容詞之 “*this*,” 故知為單數.

News (消息).——此字現今亦幾常用之如單數; 如, “The ill new *runs* apace” (此惡消息傳聞疾速). 此是用單數動詞之 “*runs*,” 故知為單數.

Inning 是 *cricket* 打球戲之用語, 謂入其內而使用擊棍之號數之意. 此字常用於單數; 如, “We have not yet had *an* innings” (我等未曾當過一次之 *innings*); “Our eleven beat the other by *an* innings and ten runs” (我隊十一人以一次之 *innings* 與十次之 *runs** 打敗敵隊).

* 亦 *cricket* 打球之用語.

Gallows (絞刑臺).——此字用之如單數, 如, “They fixed up *a Gallows*” (彼等築一絞刑臺).

Odds 用於賭博之語, 表一方之賭物, 與他方之賭物贏輸之差異也.——“We gave him *a heavy odds* against ourselves” (我等之賭物, 比於彼之賭物而甚差異, 頗不利於我等).

86. 名詞有全不用於單數者, 此等名詞大多數屬於事物之名, 蓋其每字含有複數之意, 或由多部分之事物成立故也.

(a) 器械或器具.—Arms (武器), bellows (風櫃), fetters (桎梏), pincers (鐵鉗), scissors (小剪刀), tongs (火箸), shears (大剪刀), snuffers (燭剪), tweezers (鑷子).

(b) 衣服品.—breeches (褲), drawers (內褲), pantaloons (長褲), trappings (馬飾), trousers (外褲), hose (長襪).

(c) 疾病之類.—measles (麻疹), mumps (紅腮症), staggers (暈眩病), small-pox (痘症, 往昔此字併音爲一 small-pocks).

(d) 身體之諸部.—bowels (臟腑), entrails (臟腑), intestines (腸), giblets (鷄之臟腑).

(e) 字末有 *ics* 之科學或題目等名稱.—Physics (物理學), politics (政治學), ethics (倫理學), metaphysics (純正哲學).

此等名詞原是複數, 因為其所翻譯之相當希臘語原是複數也.

(f) 雜語.—Ashes (灰), annals (年代記), assets (遺產), dregs (渣滓), embers (餘燼), chattels (一切所有物), lees (渣), nuptials (婚禮), obsequies (葬禮), shambles (肉店), statistics (統計表), victuals (食料品), hustings (倫敦之裁判所), proceeds (得利), thanks (感謝), tidings (消息), downs (岸邊之砂山), suds (肥皂水), wages

工金), chaps (罅隙), auspices (兆頭), billiards (衝球戲), environs (周圍之地), thews (筋力), mews (禁錮所), contents (目錄), credentials (委任狀), 等.

PARSING MODEL FOR NOUNS.

名詞解剖之模範

(a) *Boys learn grammar in the class* (童子等學其學級之文法).

Boys.—Common Noun, plural number, masculine gender, nominative case, 動詞 “learn” 之主辭.

Learn.—Verb.

Grammar.—Abstract Noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, 動詞 “learn” 之賓辭.

In.—Preposition 引 “class” 爲其賓辭.

The.—Adjective, 形容名詞之 “class.”

Class.—Collective Noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, 前置詞 “in” 之賓辭.

(b) *Cow's milk is often drunk by young children.*

(牛乳常爲小孩子所飲)

Cow's.—Common Noun, singular number, feminine gender, possessive case.

Milk.—Material Noun, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case, 動詞 “is drunk” 之主辭.

Often.—Adverb of time, 形容動詞之 “is drunk.”

Is drunk.—Verb.

By.—Preposition, 引 “children” 爲其賓辭.

Young.—Adjective, 形容 “children.”

Children.—Common Noun, plural number, common gender, objective case, 前置詞 “by” 之次之賓辭.

The.—Adjective, 形容 “flock.”

Flock.—Collective Noun, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case, 動詞 “is eating” 之主辭.

Of.—Preposition, 引 “sheep” 爲其賓辭。

Sheep.—Common Noun, plural number, common gender, objective case, 前置詞 “of” 之次之賓辭。

Is eating.—Verb.

Grass.—Material Noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, 動詞 “is eating” 之次之賓辭。

In.—Preposition, 引 “orchard” 爲其賓辭。

James's.—Proper Noun, singular number, masculine gender, possessive case.

Orchard.—Collective Nouns, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, 前置詞 “in” 之次之賓辭。

Chapter III. 第三編

ADJECTIVES. 形容詞

§ I 章. THE KINDS OF ADJECTIVES.

87. Adjective Defined 形容詞之定義：——形容詞者，形容名詞之辭也。（§ 14）。

此定義爲解剖形容詞之所必當用，故從便利上而仍之。但尚有須說明者。形容詞者，爲示一種之特性者也。所謂形容或變更¹名詞云者，即限制²名詞之適用於形容詞所示備有特

¹ 變更者原字爲 modify，即變更名詞之意義是也。如 “a horse,” 不過 “一馬” 之意耳。至附加一形容詞之 “white” 而爲 “a white horse,” 則前此 “一馬” 之意而之爲 “一白馬” 之意矣。又形容者，原字爲 “quality” 顯名詞之性質之義也。如 “a horse,” 其馬之性質不顯，至云 “a white horse,” 則馬之白性質顯矣。要之二字雖異，而其義則一，且不外形容名詞之意耳。

² 限制名詞之適用者，使名詞適用於形容詞所示之特性也。如 “a horse” 是屬於馬之種類耳，而不知爲何種馬也。至附加以 “white” 而云 “a white horse,” 則限定此馬是屬於馬種類中之白馬矣。

性之人物者也。

故凡形容詞有限制之効力，是以前雖云“形容詞者，限制名詞之適用也，”亦無不可。¹

88. 形容詞之種類有六：一

- (a) **Proper 固有**：一用固有名詞而記述事物者。
- (b) **Descriptive 名狀**：一示事物之如何性質或狀態者。
- (c) **Quantitative 分量**：一示事物若干之量者。
- (d) **Numeral 數**：一示事物之幾何或如何之順序者。
- (e) **Demonstrative 指示**：一示何箇或何欸或何樣之事物者。
- (f) **Distributive 分配**：一示事物個個之各別或個個之集合者。

Proper Adjectives 固有形容詞

89. 固有形容詞者，限制名詞之適用於含於固有名詞之範圍內之人物者也。（寫固有形容詞，其起端之字，亦須寫頭文字。）

The *Indian* plains = the plains of India.

（印度之原野）

The *Turkish* empire = the Empire of Turks.

（土爾其之帝國）

¹ 此簡短之定義，見 mason's 文法書三十七頁八八節，彼云「形容詞者，限制名詞之適用於該形容詞所示之有性質，分量，關係，者也。」

The *Chinese* pilgrim = a pilgrim from China.

(由中國來之巡拜者)

The *Gangetic* plain = the plain watered by the Ganges.

(被恒河灌溉之原野)

The *English* language = the language of England.

(英國之國語)

Descriptive Adjectives 名狀形容詞

即表 *Quality* 性質或 *State* 狀態

90. 名詞狀形容詞者，限制名詞之適用於形容詞所表之有性質或狀態之人或事物者也。

A *brave* boy (勇敢童子); a *sick* lion (病獅); a *tame* cat (馴貓); a *large* field (廣野); a *black* horse (黑馬); an *industrious* student (勤勉學生); a *careful* workman (謹慎工人)。

Quantitative Adjectives 分量形容詞

即表 *Quantity* 量或 *Degree* 度。

91. 分量形容詞者，限制名詞之適用於形容詞所表之量或度之事物也。屬於此種形容詞之主要者，如一 *Much*, *little*; *no* 或 *none*; *some*, *any*; *enough*, 或 *sufficient*; *all* 或 *whole*, *half*。

He ate *much* (a large quantity of (bread)). (他食多量麵包)

He ate *little* (a small quantity of) bread. (他食少量 ”)

He ate *no* bread. (他並不食麵包)

I had *none*. (我已無)

He ate *some* (a certain quantity of) bread. (他食若干量麵包)

He did not ate *any* (any quantity of) bread. (他未嘗食多少量麵包)

He ate *enough* or *sufficient* bread. (他食全量麵包)

A *half* holiday is better than *none*. (半日休息勝於無)

備考.—“no”與“none”之差異者，“no”用爲形容現於文面上之名詞，“none”用爲形容省略之名詞；如“I had *no* bread”及“I had *none*”是也。

92. 分量形容詞之連續其後者必是單數名詞，且此名詞常爲物質或抽象名詞；如 *much* bread (=物質)；*much* pain (=抽象)。

備考.—普通之言辭間，常於物質(物質名詞)而稱分量，於性質(抽象名詞)而稱程度，故分量形容詞亦程度形容詞。

93. *Some*, *any*.——此兩形容詞之用法大異其趣，茲設例解之如下：—

(a) *Some* 用於肯定文；如：—

“He has procured *some* bread” (他得若干之麵包)，設將此文改云 “He has procured *any* bread” 則誤。

(b) *Any* 用於否定文；如：—

“He has not procured *any* bread (並不得麵包)，設將此文改云 “he has not procured *some* bread” 亦誤。

Any 雖用於如前所述之否定文，然設云 “no *any*” 却又不得。每見學者如此用法，蓋誤之甚矣。故必不可云 “He has procured *no any* bread” 要云 “He has not procured *any* bread” 或 “He has procured *no* bread.”

(c) **Any** 與 **some** 兩辭可以兩用於疑問文：—

Has he procured *any* bread?

Has he procured *some* bread?

但如此疑問文，普通用 “any” 多於 “some.”

94. **Little, a little, the little**：——此三者各有特別之意義。

(a) **Little** 否定形容詞 “not much” 之意，即 “不多” 也。

He has *little* money (=not much money).

(他所有之貨財無幾)

(b) **A little** 肯定形容詞，“some at least” 之意，即僅少量也。

He had *a little* money (=some money at least although the amount was small). (彼有些少之貨財)

(c) **The little** 此則同時含有否定與肯定二種之斷定意。

He spent *the little* money he had. (他罄其僅有之金錢而消費之)

詳解此文則含有兩義如下：—

(1) The money he has was not much. (否定文)

(彼有之金錢不多)

(2) He spent all the money that he had. (肯定文)

(彼盡消費其所有之金錢)

Numeral Adjectives 數形容詞

95. 數形容詞者，限制名詞之適用於形容詞所表之數或順序之人或事物也。

數形容詞大別爲二種；如：一

I. DEFINITE 有定 II. INDEFINITE 無定

96. **Definite numerals** 有定數形容詞者，表精確之數也。

有定數形容詞所表之事物而言其幾個；如 “one” “two” “three” 者；謂之**基數 Cardinals**。

有定數形容詞所表之事物而言其順序；如 “first” “second” “third” 者；謂之**序數 Ordinals**。

有定數形容詞所表之事物而言其度數之反覆者；謂之**倍數 Multiplicative**。

茲列其三種數如下：一

<i>Cardinals.</i>	<i>Ordinals.</i>	<i>Multiplicative.</i>
One (一個)	first (第一)	one only, single, simple (單一)
Two (二個)	second (第二)	two, fold double (二倍)
Three (三個)	third (第三)	threefold, treble, triple (三倍)
Four (四個)	fourth (第四)	fourfold, quadruple (四倍)
Six (六個)	sixth (第六)	sixfold (六倍)
Seven (七個)	seventh (第七)	sevenfold (七倍)

97. **Indefinite numerals** 無定數形容詞者，不明言其幾個，而第言其大略也。

此種形容詞之主要者如下：——*All, some, enough, no* 或 *none; many, few; several, sundry.*

All men are mortal.

(凡人皆死)

No men were present.

(無人出席)

Some men die young.

(有人夭死)

Ten men will be enough.

(十人便足)

Many men are poor.

(多數貧人)

Few men are rich.

(少數富人)

Several men came.

(數人到來)

Sundry men went away.

(多數之人已去)

有定數形容詞，亦可置 *some* 或 *about* 於其前而成無定數：—

Some twenty men were present. (大約二十人出席)，“*some* twenty men” 與 “*about* twenty men,” twenty men more or less present” 同。

98. “Some,” “enough,” “all,” “no” 或 “none” 等辭，若從其意義上而論，則可用為數形容詞或分量形容詞。

此等辭所形容者是物質或抽象名詞時，是屬於分量形容詞，如 § 92 所述者是也。但其所形容者是普通名詞或他名詞之用於普通名詞而作複數者 (參照 § 46)，是屬於數形容詞。

量形容詞

Much; he had much bread.

(他有多量之麵包)

Little; he had little bread.

Enough; he had enough bread.

Some; he had some bread.

No; he had no bread.

All; he had all the bread.

Any; have you had any bread?

數形容詞

Many; he had many loaves of bread.

(彼有多數之麵包團)

Few; he had few loaves of bread.

Enough; he had loaves enough.

Some; he had some loaves of bread.

No; he had no loaves of bread.

All; he had all the loaves of bread.

Any; did you bring any loaves?

99. *Few*, *a few*, *the few*.—此等辭各有不同之特有意義：—

(a) *Few* 否定形容詞，有 “not many” 之意即 “不多” 之義。

He read *few* books (=he did *not* read *many* books).

(他讀之書不多)

(b) **A few** 肯定形容詞，有“some at least”意，即“僅少”之義。

He read *a few* books (=he read *some* books *at least* though the number was small.) (他讀過幾卷書)

(c) **The few** 同時而含有否定及肯定二種之斷定意。

He read *the few* books he had.

(他讀過彼所有之幾卷書)

若詳此文則含有兩義如：一

The books he had were not many. (否定)

(彼所有之書無多)

He read all the books he had. (肯定)

(彼盡讀其所有之書)

100. **Many a, a many.**——兩辭之用法，前者接以單數名詞，後者接以複數名詞：一

(a) **Many a.**—此“a”與“one”均同等；“many a man”者，“many times one man.”(一人之倍)，即“many men”(多數人)之意也。故“many”於此是有倍數之効用：一

Many a youth and *many a* maid.

Dancing neath the greenwood shade.—*Milton.*

(多數之少年與多數之少女，舞蹈於綠樹之蔭)

(b) **A many.**—此“many”有集合名詞之効用，其次位原有前置詞之“of,”但畧之耳：一

They have not shed *a many* tears,

Dear eyes, since first I knew them well.—*Tennyson.*

(彼等未嘗流淚，余自昔深知其愛眼也)

This *many* summers on a sea of glory.—*Shakespeare*.

(此多年浮泛於名譽海上)

凡散文是最普通插入“great”於“a”與“many”之間，“A great many men”者，“a large number of men”（多數之人）之意，其“of”是省畧，然則“many”有集合名詞之効力矣。又同“a few books,” 吾亦可認為 *a few* 是集合名詞，其次位雖應有“of,” 但可作已省畧看。

備考。一往昔英語之“menigu,” 原是一集合名詞，有“a multitude”（衆多）或“a large number”（大多數）之意。至“manig”原是一無定數形容詞，有“many”（多）之意。近代英語之“many”通用於“menigu”及“manig”兩語，蓋“a many”句之“many”與“menigu”等，而“many a”句之“many”與“manig”等也。

Shakespeare 文中已用過“*A many of our bodies*”（我等身體之多數）。

101. 示有定數分量之辭，有時亦用集合名詞，且又如前文所述之“many”的用法，其後之“of”省畧之。

A dozen (of) sheep (十二頭羊); *a million* (of) apples (一萬個蘋果)。

A hundred (of) years (一百年); *a thousand* (of) years (一千年)。

A hundred-thousand (of) rupees (十萬盧比); 然印度語之“lac” (十萬)之後是不畧“of;” 如“a lac of rupees” 不能云“a lac rupees.”

Demonstrative Adjectives 指示形容詞

102. 指示形容詞者，限制名詞之適用於形容詞所故意指摘之人或事物也。

Demonstrative 有“point out”（指摘）之意。

103. 此種形容詞大別爲二種：一

I. DEFINITE 有定. II. INDEFINITE 無定.

確定指摘「此人」或「此事物」時，此指摘之形容詞謂之**有定指示形容詞** *Definite Demonstrative*.

若其所指摘者惟漠然，而僅言「某人」或「某事物」之意者，此指摘之形容詞謂之**無定指示形容詞** *Indefinite Demonstrative*.

<i>Definite.</i>		<i>Indefinite.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
The 此, 其	the	A, an 或一個	
This 此	these	one 同上	
That 彼, 其	those	Any 不拘何一個	any
Yon 彼, 彼處	yon	A certain 某	certain
Yonder 同上	yonder	Such 彼	such
Such 如此	such	Some 或	some
The same 同樣	the same	Another 他之一	other
Self-same 同上	self-same	Any other 不拘何	any other
The other 其他	the other		之一

指示形容詞之數不多，大概盡於上表。

104. 形容詞之“the”稱爲**有定冠詞** *Definite article*，“a”與“an”稱爲**無定冠詞** *Indefinite article* (參照 § 15).

An 是用於母音或靜音 h 之前：一

An apple (蘋果); *an egg* (卵); *an ink-bottle* (墨壺); *an heir* (繼承人); *an hour* (一時間); *an honest man* (正直人); *an ox* (牡牛).

A 是用於子音及與 *yoo* 同音之 *u* 又與 *um* 同音之 *o* 等字之前：—

A kite (紙鳶); *a cart* (兩輪車); *a bottle* (罇); *a useful thing* (有用物); *a unit* (單位); *a one-eye man* (單眼人).

氣音 (aspirate) *h* 之前, 雖當用 *an*, 但如 “his'-to-ry” 一字, 此字之剛音在第一併音之 “his,” 是故當云 “*a his-tor'-i-cal*,” 至其為 “his-tor'-i-cal,” 是此字之剛音在二併音之 “tor” 是故當云 “*an his-tor-i-cal account*” (歷史的記錄)

註.—氣音者其音甚弱, 幾近無音. 故字之有氣音者, 可作以母音為始者看也. 而此母音之前用 *an*, 子音之前用 *a* 者, 全出於發音上之便, 決非以語形為斷. 故其併音雖以母音為始, 而發音為子音者, 則可用 *an*, 又併音雖以子音為始, 而發音為母音者則可用 *a*.

105. **Definite Demonstrative 有定指示形容詞**：——
此種形容詞之用法, 條舉如下：—

(a) **This, these.** 此兩形容詞是指事物之近在手者：—
This tree (此樹); *these trees* (此等樹).

或為強語勢時, 此字有用於所有的之義：—

This eye saw the deed. (此等眼 (即我自己之眼) 見其所業)

(b) **That, those, yon, Yonder.**—此等形容詞是指事物之離在遠者.

That tree (彼樹); *those trees* (彼等樹); *yon* 或 *yonder tree* (或 *trees*). (彼處之樹)

備考.—“*Yon*” 及 “*yonder*” 兩字, 除韻文外已罕見. 彼可隨用於單複兩數.

(c) **Such.**—此形容詞有 “*of this kind*” (如此類) 或 “*of*

that kind” (如彼類) 之意, 而大抵爲 (1) 指適是述完之某事物. (2) 指正是起述之某事物:—

(1) His praise of me was not sincere: I do not like *such* a man (或 *such* men). (彼之稱頌余, 原非出於真寔, 余不喜如此類之人也).

(2) *Such* food as we get here does not suit me.

(吾等在此所得如此類之食料, 寔不適於我等)

Such 亦用於無定指示形容詞, 其用於此法, 又非指記述於前之事物矣, 惟漠然所指不定耳.

He called at my house in *such* a day (=some day or other), and I gave *such and such* answer (some answer or other) to his questions.

(彼有時來吾家訪余, 余亦對其所問而爲二三次之回答)

備考.—“So” 變爲 “such” 之副詞時, 則與 “such” 同用於無定之意義.

A week or *so* (即 a week more or less).

(一禮拜內外)

(d) **The same, self-same, very same.**—此等形容詞全是指事物之記載於前者. 但 “self-same” 及 “very same” 比於 “same” 之意味更強.

You told him to come here to-morrow, and I gave him *the same* (或 *the self same* 或 *the very same*) answer.

(汝請他明日來此, 余當報他同一之回答)

(e) **The other.**—此辭是指記載於前文兩事物中之第二件, 而 “the one” 是指第一件.

Two women shall be grinding at the mill; *the one* shall be taken, and *the other* left.—*New Testament*.

(兩婦人將在磨房推磨, 一人將彼取, 他一人將遺留)

“The other day.”—此種特別句有無定之意, 其所指之“日”是數日前之日(即一二日前之日)故異於當日之“日。”

He came to see me *the other day*. (他前幾日來見余)

此例之“*the other day*”是“*a few days ago*”(數日前)之意, 即“*some day or other, which I cannot exactly remember.*”(不能確記得其爲何日)

106. 有定指示形容詞, 常用於指其後之複牒代名詞之先行辭 (antecedent) 之名詞.

This man whom you now see came here to-day.

(汝今所見之人, 今日來此處)

註. 一複牒代名詞之先行辭, 如此例之 *man* 是也, 即複牒代名詞 *whom* 所指之辭, 以其在於其先, 故謂之先行辭, 其詳見複牒代名詞條下.

That book which you are reading is mine.

(汝所讀之書是我的)

He is not *Such* a clever student *as* you are.

(他不似汝之如此其聰明學生)

註. 一此例之“*as*”是複牒代名詞, 而“*student*”是先行辭. “*as*”若更用於“*such*”或“*as*”或“*the same*”之後時, 則成複牒代名詞(參照 § 161).

You are reading *the same book that* I read many years ago. (汝讀之書同於余數年前讀過之書)

107. Indefinite Demonstratives — 無定指示形容詞, 其用法如下:—

(a) *A, an, a certain.*—此等無定指示形容, 是與單數名詞同用. 此表明其非指定某人或某事物也; 如“*a man*”(或人), “*a certain man*”(某人), *an apple*(或萍菓), 至“*certain*”;

亦用無定意義時，是與複數名詞同用；如 “certain men”
(某某人)

(b) **One.**—此辭通例用於數形容詞，但用在下文之意義時，亦可以作無定指示形容詞看：—

He came *one* day to see me. (彼某日來見余)

“*One* day” 是 “on a certain day which I cannot remember” (在某日但余不能記憶) 之意。

One Mr. James came to see me. (某君名惹米斯來見余)

“*One* Mr. James” 是 “a certain men whom I not know, but who is called Mr. James.” (何人則余不知，但知其名為 James) 之意。

(c) **Any.**—此辭比於 “a” 及 “an” 之語氣益強，單數與複數名詞皆可同用：—

Any man could do that. (不拘何人皆能爲之)

“*Any* man” 是 “any and every man” (不拘何人) 之用於單數之例。

You may take *any* books that you like best.

(汝最愛何書汝可取)

“*Any* books” 是 “no books in particular, but any books” (非特定之書，但不拘何書) 之意。

(d) **Some.**—此辭用於兩種意義。(1) 示不指定特別之人或事物。(2) 使有定數變爲無定數 (參照 § 97)。

(1) *Some* man (I do not know who he was) called here to-day. (某人今日來訪於此)

(2) He owes me *some* 20 rupees (*about* 20 rupees more or less). (彼人大約負欠余二十盧羅)

(c) **Another, Any other, other:**—“Another” 與單數名詞, “other” 與複數名詞, 而俱用於肯定文, 至 “Any other” 是與單複兩數而用於否定文:—

We have seen *another* man (或 *other* men) to-day. (肯定)
(吾等今日見彼一人)

We have not seen any *other* man or men to-day. (否定)

“Other” 有時用於 “than” 之前, 但用在此法, 其 “than” 須緊接 “other” 之次, 且宜可以近則使之愈近。

He has no books *other than* Sanskite.

(他於梵語以外之書便無書)

此是較於云 “he has no other books than Sanskite” 而覺其結構更佳, 蓋 “other than” 有 “different from” (比不同) 或 “except” (除) 之意. 此例同於云 “he has no books except Sanskite” 耳. 故 “than” 於此是為前置詞.

註. 一本例謂 “than” 為前置詞, 則是 “Sanskrit” 為其賓辭矣. 然不可與 “He has more books *than* I” 之 “than” 同視之. 蓋此 “than” 是接續詞, 而連接 “than I have” 之句於前句也. “I have” 之 “have,” 通例固常省畧. 然觀其主辭之 “I,” 則可知其必非前置詞, 何以故, 蓋在前置詞之後者必賓辭也 (參照前置詞編).

103. Some, any.—此兩辭用於指示, 分量, 或數等形容詞而皆各適其用. 惟因其所用之不同, 於是亦各異其義.

Some	{	(1) <i>Some</i> man called here to-day. <i>Indef. Demons.</i>
		(2) Give me more <i>some</i> bread. „ <i>Quant.</i>
		(3) Give me <i>some</i> loaves of bread. „ <i>Number.</i>
Any	{	(1) Take <i>any</i> book that you like best. „ <i>Demons.</i>
		(2) He has not had <i>any</i> bread. „ <i>Quant.</i>
		(3) Did you bring <i>any</i> loaves. „ <i>Number.</i>

此兩形皆是無定意義之形容詞。然二者比較之，則“some”稍爲有定，觀下文可以知矣。

Did *any* man call here to-day? yes; *some* man did call. (今日有人來訪於此乎，曰然；曾有一位來過)

Take *any* books that you like; but you must take *some*. (汝取何書皆由汝；但汝須要取)

Can you come at *some* hour to-day? yes; at *any* hour you like. (汝今日何時可來乎，曰然；在何時都隨汝中意)

Distributive Adjectives 分配形容詞

109. 分配形容詞者，限制名詞之適用，以表名詞所示之人或事物之可作個個之各別或個個之集合看者也。

110. 屬於此種之形容詞有四：即 *each*, *every*, *either* *neither* 是也。

(a) *Each*.—此辭示兩物中之一或兩事物以上之一：—

The *two* men had *each* a gun. (二人各有一槍)

The *twenty* men had *each* a gun. (二十人各有一槍)

Every.—此字絕不示兩物中之一，而常用爲示兩物以上之各物：—

Every man (out of the twenty present) had a gun.

(各人有一槍)

備考.—“*Every*”比於“*each*”之意味更強，其意即“*each without exception*”(各無例外)，即“*all the individuals of a group, take single*”(全群中之每人)。

Every six hours 及其他同樣之辭。——此辭之意，是併七時間爲一集合體而作一時間看，即每六時之意：—

He felt hungry *every five hours* (=at the close of every space of five hours).

(他每五時感腹空)

Every other.—此辭是每箇第二 (every second), 或各箇隔號 (each alternate) 之意:—

He was attacked with fevers *every other day* (on every second day or on each alternate day),

(他每日或隔日爲熱病所襲)

(c) **Either.**—此辭含有兩意味: (1) 兩物中之一 (one of two): (2) 兩物中之各物 (each of two=*both*).

(1) You can take *either* side; that is one side at the other. (汝取何一邊皆可, 即一邊或他邊也)

(2) The river overflowed on *cither* side; that is on both sides. (河水無邊不氾濫, 即兩邊皆是也)

(d) **Neither.**—此辭是“either”之否定辭, 蓋謂兩者中之既非甲又非乙之意也.

“You should take *neither* side;” that is neither this side nor that, neither the one side nor the other.

(汝無論何邊皆不取可; 即既非此邊又非彼邊)

111. **Each other, one another.**—此兩句是由分配形容詞之“each”“one” (each 同於 one), 與無定指示形容詞之“other, another” 結合而成者:—

(a) **Each other.**—關於兩個人物而用之:—

The two men struck *each other* (即 *each man struck the other man*). (兩人互擊)

(b) **One another.**—關於兩個人物以上而用之：—

They all loved *one another* (即 each man loved *every other man*). (彼等互相愛愛)

112. 分配形容詞之意義，又可用於下舉之方法解釋之：—

(a) 用前置詞之“by”：—

They went out *two by two* or *by twos* (in separate pairs).
(彼等兩箇兩箇而出行)

(b) 以接續詞之“and”聯結，如“*two and two*,” “*three and three*” 而用：—

They went out *two and two* (in separate pairs).
(同上)

(c) 用“*At a time*”之句；如：—

They went out *two at a time* (in separate pairs).
(同上)

(d) 用“*a piece*”之句；如：—

The twenty men had a gun *a piece* (had each a gun).
(其二十人各有一槍)

(e) 形容詞之“*respective*”；如：—

They went to their *respective* homes (each to his own).
(彼等各自歸其家)

§ 2 章. THE USES OF ADJECTIVES.

形容詞之二用法

113. 形容詞有兩法之異用：— (1) 修飾的用法 **Attributive**, 敘述的用法. (2) **Predicative**.

(a) 修飾的用法者，直接以形容其名詞也。因是形容詞與名詞似成一種之混合名詞 (Compound Noun)。

A *lame* horse (跛馬); A *noble* character (高尚性質)。

凡真正形容詞皆可為修飾的用法，然設云 “an asleep man” 却又不可，蓋 “asleep” 及其同類之字非形容詞也，乃副詞耳。(參照 § 267, 2)。

(b) 敘述的用法者，其為文之敘述之一部分也。此際之形容詞，則藉動詞之力(即透過其動詞)以間接而形容其名詞。

The horse went *lame* (彼馬變成跛)。His character is *noble*。

(彼之性質高尚)

形容詞之如此用法，是為動詞之完成辭。何則，蓋其能完足動詞所未及言之義也。

§ 3 章三. SUBSTITUTES FOR ADJECTIVES.

形容詞之代用辭

114. 形容詞是一形容字或限制字，已詳論於前 (§ 87) 矣。故凡一字或數字而如形容詞之限制名詞者，皆可作形容詞之代用辭看。

(1) 分詞 (即動詞狀形容詞 § 18) 如：—

A *fading* flower (萎花)。A *fallen* tree (倒樹)。

(2) 有省畧分詞之副詞：—

The *then* (reigning 畧) king (當時之王)。

The *down* (going 畧) train (下行火車)。

註。—此例既謂有省畧分詞之 *reigning* 畧於 “then” 與 king 之間，則是副詞之 “then,” 是形容分詞之 *reining*，而非直接以形容名詞之 “King” 矣。蓋

副詞以不形容名詞代名詞爲原則也。惟分詞之無論爲名詞之性質，與形容詞性質者，妨無以副詞形容之。

(3) 用於形容詞之名詞或動名詞：—

A *river* fish (=a fish living in rivers). (名詞之例)

(河魚)

A *bathing* place (=a place used for bathing). (動名詞之例)

(浴場)

(4) 領位之名詞或代名詞：—

My book. *Their* friendship. *My* sons teacher.

(我的書)

(彼等之友情)

(吾子之教師)

(5) 無定法之動詞：—

A *chair* to sit on. Water to drink.

(可坐椅)

(飲用水)

(6) 與賓辭相合之前置詞：—

A man of *virtue* (=a virtuous man).

(道德之人)

(7) 形容詞節，即一節有形容詞之作用者（參照 § 5 之定義）：—

The book *that you lent me* will not be last.

(汝借與余之書不至失去)

§ 4 章四. ON THE IDIOMATIC USES OF ARTICLES.

冠詞之慣用法

115. 凡於單數普通名之前而冠以冠詞是爲原則。故設云 “I saw *dog*” 時，必云 “I saw *a* dog” 或 “*the* dog” 乃可。

(a) 若欲特指乎名詞時，則宜用有定冠詞：—

Let us go and bathe in *the* river (即 the river near our house or the river where we usually bathe).

(待我等往浴於河)

This settle *the* matter (即 the matter in which we are engaged). (此安定事件)

They struck him in *the* face (即 in his own face).

(彼等擊彼之面)

(b) 若欲概指乎名詞時，宜用無定冠詞：—

A tiger is a fierce animal (即 any tiger or tigers generally). (虎是猛獸也)

A cat is not so faithful as a dog.

(貓不若狗之忠實)

備考.—“A”是“one”之縮寫形(參照? 15), 故有時用之於“one”之意義：—

A stich (=one stich) in time saves nine.

(早縫一針可省九針)

Two of a trade (=of the same trade) should live apart.

(兩業相同當異處)

116. 普通名詞而用於複數時，設非欲特指之者，斯不可用有定冠詞以冠之：—

Storks gobble up frogs. (鴻吞食蛙)

然設語及如在於近前之水池之特別鴻與蛙，則措詞應下：—

Look! *the* storks are gobbling up *the* frogs.

(請看，鴻吞食蛙)

117. 凡固有，物質，抽象等名詞，除其用於普通名詞外

(§ 46), 則不宜用冠詞以冠之。

He is *the nestor* (=the oldest man) of the service. (他是勤勞之 *nestor*). “*nestor*” 是希臘比羅之王, 在職最久年齡極高而長於世事之人。此 “*nestor*” 雖固有名詞, 但於此是用於普通名詞之老人意義, 故可冠之以 “*the*.”

Sugar-cane is one of *the grasses* (=kinds of grass). (甘蔗是草之種). 此 “*grass*” 雖是物質名詞, 但於此是用於普通名詞之草之一種意義, 故可冠之以 “*the*.”

He is *a justice* of the peace. (他是治安判事). 此 “*justice*” 雖是抽名詞, 但於此是用於普通名詞之治安判官之意義, 故可冠以 “*a*.”

118. 有定冠詞之 “*the*,” 有時冠於普通名詞之前, 而示事物之種類者. 在此用法, 是使其中之一物, 以代表種類之全体者也.

The lion is the king of beasts. (獅者獸之王也)

The rose is the most beautiful of flowers. (玫瑰者花之最美者也).

The liar shall no go unpunished. (虛言者不能免於罪)

119. “*The*” 冠於普通名詞時, 則能使其名詞生抽象的之意味:—

He felt *the patriot* (the patriotic spirit or feeling) rise within his breast. (彼人覺愛國之心湧起於其胸中)

He acted *the lord* (the lordly or overbearing character) where he went. (彼人到處行尊大之所爲)

He allowed *the father* (his fatherly feelings) to be overruled by *the judge* (his sense of duty as a judge), and declared his own son to be guilty. (彼之爲父之情(爲父愛

子之情), 不禁被抑制於爲裁判官之義務心而宣告其子之有罪)。

120. 凡於固有之名詞之前而不能冠之以“the,” 是爲原則, 故下所舉之例文而用之者例外耳。

(a) 河之名; 如:——*The Gange* (恒河), *the Indus* (印度河), *the nerbudda*¹ (逆捕他河), *the Rhine* (萊因河), *the Danube* (多瑙河)。

(b) 群島之名; 如:——*The Dndaman*² *Islands* (晏陀巒群島), *the East Indies* (東印度群島), *the Hebrides*³ (希白力兌土諸島), (但孤獨之島則不用“*the*”如 *Ceylon* (錫蘭島), *Ireland* (愛爾蘭島), *Sicily*⁴ (西西利島)。

(c) 群山之名; 如:——*The Himalayas* (喜馬拉亞山), *the Vindhya*⁵ (頻都耶山), *the Alps* (亞爾的山), 但孤獨山之名則不用“*the*,” 如 *Mount Abu*⁶ (亞表峯), *Mount Everest*⁷ (俟佛勒斯峯), *Parasnath* (帕拉斯拿斯峰)。

(d) 海峽, 灣, 海及大洋之名; 如:——“*The Palk straits*⁸ (巴爾克海峽), *the Straits of Babelmandeb*⁹ (哭海頸), *the Gulf of Cambay*¹⁰ (甘惹逸灣), *the Persian Gulf* (波斯灣), *the Bay of Bengal* (孟加拉灣), *the Arabian Sea* (亞刺比亞海), *the*

1. 中央印度之河. 2. 孟加拉灣中之火山, 島有珊瑚礁圍之. 3. 蘇格蘭西岸之群島, 其數凡五百餘. 4. 意大利南端之大島. 5. 爲構成中央印度台坎高原斯崖之山系. 6. 印度河口東部阿拉勿利山 (Aravalli Hills) 南山端之峯. 7. 印度東北喜馬拉亞 (Mts. Himalayas) 東頭之高峯. 8. 印度南錫蘭北部與印度相對之海峽. 9. 又名淚門, 紅海入口處, 海岸近海處多暗礁船舶苦之故云. 10. 印度西岸孟買之北一港.

Mediterranean Sea (地中海), *the* Indian Ocean (印度洋), *the* Atlantic Ocean (大西洋).

(e) 省 (province) 之名甚少用 “the;” 如: —— Bengal (孟加拉省), Behar (比露省), Orissa¹ (荷黎薩省), Assam (亞薩省), Oudh² (烏多省), 惟於印度有一例外之省名而用 “the;” 如 *the* Punjab (攀譚省).

(f) “The” 又常用之冠於諸書固有之名: —— *The* Bible (聖書), *the* Ramayan (印度之詩經), 但其書名已冠有著者之名者, 則 “the” 不宜用; 如: —— “I have read *Shakespeare*” (余讀式斯俾亞文集)

備考. 一名詞尙有不用冠詞之 “the” 者如下: —

(a) 城都之名; 如: — London (倫敦), Calcutta (加爾各搭).

(b) 岬之名; 如: — Cape Comorin³ (甘把里岬), Cape Horn⁴ (合恩岬).

(c) 邦國之名; 如: — England (英國), India (印度).

(d) 大陸之名; 如: — Asia (亞細亞), Europe (歐羅巴).

(e) 孤島之名; 如: — Ceylon (錫蘭), Sicily (西西利).

(f) 孤山之名; 如: — Mount Abu (亞表峯), Parasnath (帕拉斯拿斯峯).

(g) 湖之名; 如: — Lake Sambhar⁵ (三部合湖), Lake Chelka (支爾單湖), Lake Huron (休崙湖).

121. Omission of Article 冠詞之省畧: —— 常例於單數普通名詞之前, 應不用冠詞. 然下所舉之普通名詞而用之

1. 孟加拉之東南之省. 2. 亦孟加拉之一省. 3. 印度最南端之一岬. 4. 亞美利加洲最南端之一岬. 5. 阿拉勿利山東北日宜不爾省 (Jaipur) 西之一小湖.

者，蓋例外耳。故不可不注意。

(a) 稱號或職業之名：—

Queen Victoria (女王域多利)； *King George I.* (佐治第一世)； *Lord Ashly* (亞斯利卿)； *Saint Paul* (聖保羅)； *Judge Anson* (安善判事)； *General Roberts* (羅伯將官)； *Father Ignatius* (壹納丟長老)； *Victoria, queen of England* (英國女皇域多利)； *George I., King of England* (英王佐治第一世)； *Kareen Bux, Carpenter* (加連伯士大匠)； *Ram Dutt, Goldsmith* (拉密杜得鍛冶匠)； *Jugal Kishore, Banker or Bahajan* (銀行家或 Mahajan 求加其羅氏)； *Kisha Mahan, Bankman* [瞿利斯郡摩漢公，印度族階之最上級人(僧侶及貴族)]

(b) 他動詞與附隨於其後之賓辭而成立一句時，其賓辭若屬於普通名詞者，則不冠之以冠詞或數之區別：—

The trees struck *root* (非 *the roots*) into the ground.

(樹木刺其根入土中)

註。一此“*root*”是不附“*the*,” 又不必變為複數如“*the roots*.” 蓋此“*struck root*”是一種之動作，殊傾於抽象的意義也。以下各例亦同。

The boys leave *school* (非 *the school*) at four o'clock.

(學童等四時離校)

Students must give *ear* (非 *the ears*) to what teachers tells them：—

(學生須用耳聽教師之誨已)

He sent *word* that he would come soon.

(他送音來謂他就來)

You cannot set *foot* in this house.

(汝不能住足於此屋)

He shook *hands* with his old friends.

(他與其舊友握手)

We will keep *house* in this village.

(我等將在村此建屋)

The King resolved to give *battle* to his enemies.

(王決意攻敵)

The sailors cast *anchor* for the night, and set *sail* again next day.

(舟人夜間碇泊而翌日再出帆)

The pile of logs has taken *fire*, or caught *fire*.

(材木之堆已發火)

He took *breath*, when he rose up out of the water.

(彼浮出水面時便呼吸)

(c) 前置詞與附隨於其後之賓辭而成立一句，且其句無論對於何人及場所而皆同一樣之組織者，則其賓辭之普通名詞可不冠之以冠詞：—

Some came *by land*, and some *by water*.

(或由陸路來，或由水路來)

It would be better to go *on foot* than *on horseback*.

(徒步而去好過乘馬)

He is out *at sea*, *on board* ship.

(彼乘舟而在海上)

A rat is quite *at home*, when it is *under ground*.

(鼠匿于地下時，則全無恐心)

Men who are *in jail* are sometimes made to work *out of doors*. (人之繫於獄中時，亦有時使做工於戶外)

He is a scholar *by name*, but not *in fact*.

(他有儒者之名而無其實)

He fell sick *at school*, and is now *in bed*.

(他在學堂起病, 今已臥於床)

Those who work hard *by day* must not work *by night*

also. (其勞動於日間者, 勿更勞動於夜間)

He is *over head and ears in debt*, or in trouble etc.

(他負債於蒙頭蔽面)

He begins work *at daybreak* and leaves off *at sunset*.

(他日出而作, 日入而息)

Such food is not fit *for man or beast*.

(此類食料是不適於人類或獸類)

Speak the truth *in court*, whether you have been at *fault*

or not. (汝有過與否, 在法庭照實而言)

We shall never get this either *for love or money*.

(吾等若為愛情或為金錢將不得此)

The ship is riding *at anchor*, and the sailors are now *at*

ease. (船既投錨, 水夫今得安息)

This will be paid *at sight or on demand*.

(此數可以由一覽或請求而即支付)

I met your old friend *at dinner* to-day.

(余今日食殮之際遇汝之舊友)

He lends out money *at interest*; for he has much cash

in hand. (他有許多現金在手, 所以借出去取息)

§ 5 章五. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

形容詞用如名詞

122. 欲措辭之簡易, 可以用形容詞代用名詞. 至名詞之在

此地位，或於文面上而省畧之者有之，或於文之構造上而廢去之者有之。

註：一省畧與廢去，其意大異，省畧者，文面上省畧其名詞，而含蓄其意於形容詞中也；如，“the brave,” 其意即 “the brave men” 故彼雖僅曰 “the brave,” 而 men 寔含蓄於形容詞 “brave” 中矣，至廢去者則非省畧名詞於形容詞之後，乃使其形容詞直成名詞也，讀下文可知。

123. 代用名詞之形容詞能用之於複數或領位時，則名詞即廢去，而形容詞遂轉化為完全之名詞。如此轉化，是謂完全之轉化。何則，蓋形容不認能有領位形。又形容詞中除 “this” 與 “that” 外，亦無複數形。故今變之複數或領位，乃正所以使其不混同於原身形容詞也。

Nobles (貴族). (形容詞用於複數而轉化為名詞之例)

此 “nobles” 與 “noble men” 或 *noblemen* 同。

A noble's house (一貴族之家). (形容詞用於領位而轉化為名詞之例)

此 “*A noble's house*” 與 *a nobleman's house* 同。

I have told you many secrets. (余已告汝好多秘密事)

此同於第一例，“secrets” 同於 *secret things*。

124. 凡用固有形容詞以表某國語時，其形容詞之前不要冠詞，而又無名詞以述出。

He speaks English, but not Hindi. (他能講英語但不能印度語)

The Grammar of English is simple than that of Persian.

(英文法比於波斯文法較為簡單)

125. 代用名詞之形容詞，有限用於單數者，亦有限用於複數者，又有用於單複兩數者：一

(a) 限於單數者：一

Our all (我等全体). The whole (全体). Our best (我等之極力). Our worst (我等之極不幸).

Much (如 much has been done). (已成許多事)

More (如 more has been done). („ 更多)

Little (如 little has been done). („ 些少)

Less (如 less has been done). („ 更少)

(3) 限於複數者：—

Opposites (反對者). Morals (道德之行). Contraries (反對說). Particulars (詳細). Movables (動產). Eatables (適食之物). Drinkables (適飲之物). Valuable (貴重品). Green (青菜). Sweets and bitters (世界之苦樂). Our better (比我等之位置高者). Our equals (我等之同等者). The ancients (古代人). The moderns (近代人). The Commons (平民).

(c) 兩用於單複數者：—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
A secret 密事	secrets	A liquid 液体	liquids
A solid 固体	solids	A total 總計	totals
A capital 資本	capitals	An elder 長上	elders
A senior 先輩	seniors	A junior 幼弱者	juniors
A native 土人	natives	A mortal 可死者	mortals
An inferior 劣者	inferiors	A superior 優者	superiors
A criminal 罪人	criminal		

126. 分詞 (寔際上爲動詞狀形容詞 (參照 § 18) 與普通之形容詞同, 有用之爲複數名詞者.

He came here with all his *belongings*.

(他盡携其所有物而來此)

I am much pleased with my *surroundings*.

(余對於吾周圍之事物甚喜)

Let *bygones* be *bygones* (=let past offences be forgotten).

(莫念舊事)

127. 通常慣用之句，有聯對而用之形容詞。至其後之名詞亦有省畧之者：—

From bad to worse (益惡或益苦)；如，He is going *from bad to worse* (from a bad state to a worse one).

(彼益蹈於苦境)

The long and short (大要)；如，“*The long and short* (the ~~the~~ *main* and substance) of the matter is,.....

(其事件之大要是)

In black and white (筆記)；如，“Let me see it in *black and white* (written with black ink on white paper).

(待余觀其筆記)

Through thick and thin (排萬難)；如，“He makes his way *through thick and thin*.” (他排萬難而進)

From first to last (=from the beginning to the end). (始終)

At sixes and sevens (in a state of disorder 紊亂狀)；如，

“The men of the house were all *at sixes and sevens*.”

(家內之人皆不和)

“Every thing in the city is *at sixes and sevens*,”

(市中之物皆無秩序)

High and low (各處)；如，“He searched for his property

high and low (in high places and low ones, everywhere, up and down).” (他於處處搜索其財物)

Right or wrong (是非); 如 “I think to do this *right or wrong*” (whether the act is right or not).

(不論是非余欲爲之)

For better, for worse (善惡); 如, “The married you *for better for worse* (for any good or evil that may fall to your lot hereafter).

(彼女不管汝今後之運命善惡如何, 都與汝結婚)

Fast and loose (無常); 如, “He plays *fast and loose* (with a tight or loose hold, as he may prefer; that, is at random, recklessly). (他戲舞無度)

Black and blue (黑痕); 如, “He beat them *black and blue*” (so as to bring out black and blue marks on the skin). (他擊彼等至於起黑痕(傷痕))

Right and left (四方); 如, “He struck out* *right and left*. (to this side and that side). (彼漂泊四方)

Slow and steady (不急而著寔). 如, “*Slow and steady* (patient and steady progress) winse the race.

(忍耐與著實, 足以勝其競爭)

For good 或 *for good and all* (=finally permanently; for all future Consequences, good or evil. (究竟, 終; 不拘將來之結果之好與不好)

123. Adjectives preceded by “the” 冠 “the” 之形容詞:——形容詞而冠有定冠詞者, 則可用之爲名詞. 下所揭之三種意義, 是其最適用者也; 如:—

(1) 單表人類, 且其意義爲通常複數之普通名詞:—

* to struck out = to wander.

None but *the brave* (=those men who are brave) deserves the fair. (與佳人爲配偶而足相當者, 惟勇者而已)

To *the pure* (=those persons who are pure) all things are pure. (清潔之人則諸事皆清)

The blind received their sight; *the lame* walk; *the dumb* speak, *the dead* are raised up; to *the poor* the gospel is preached.—*New Testament*.

(盲者視, 跛者行; 啞者言; 死者蘇; 貧者聽福音)

(2) 抽象名詞(單數):—

The good [=that quality which is good (善良的性質) =goodness in general (一般之善).]

The beautiful [=that quality which is beautiful (美麗的性質) =beauty in general (一般之美麗).]

All the motions of his nature were towards *the true, the natural, the sweet, the gentle*.—*De Quincey*.

(凡其性質之發動, 是傾向於誠寔, 天真, 溫柔, 儒雅之動作)

(3) 事物特別部分之名:—

The white (=白部分) of eye (眼之白球).

The vitals (=最重要之部分) of the body (身體之重要部分).

The thick (=最茂盛之部分) of the forest (森林之稠密部分).

The wilds (=不毛之部分) of a country (國之不毛地).

The interiors (=內面之部分) of a house (屋之內部).

The exterior (=外面之部分) of a house (屋之外部).

The middle (=正中之部分) of a river (河之中流).

The small (=最小之部分) of a back (背之最小部分).

§ 5 章六. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

形容詞之比較

129. 性質形容詞之大多數，及分量形容詞中兩個之“*much*”與“*little*”，又數形容詞中兩個之“*many*”與“*few*”，皆有程度之比較。

分量形容詞而除“*much*”與“*little*”外，數形容詞而除“*many*”與“*few*”外，及一切之固有，指示，分配，之三種形容詞，又如 *blue* (藍), *square* (方形), *circular* (圓形), *solar* (太陽的), *lunar* (太陰的), *oblong* (偏長形), *annual* (年年), *monthly* (月月), *vegetable* (植物的), *mineral* (礦物), *milky* (乳汁形狀), *golden* (黃金) 等之名狀形容詞，其意義上無程度之比較。

130. 形容詞程度之比較有三種——原級 *Positive*, 比較級 *Comparative*, 最高級 *Superlative*, 是也。

原級者，示單純之性質者也；如，“*a beautiful horse*” (美麗之馬)，

比較級者，示同一性質中之程度略高者也；如，“*a more beautiful horse*” (更美麗之馬)。

最高級者，示同一性質中之程度最高者也；如，“*the most beautiful horse*” (最美麗之馬)。

131. 凡由二併音以上而成之形容詞，及僅由二併音而成之大多數者，則照通例而加 *more* 以成比較級，加 *most* 以成最高級。

132. 但由一併音而成之一切形容詞，及二併音而成之一部分者，亦可以加 *er* 或 *r* 而成比較級，加 *est* 或 *st* 而成最高級：—

(a) 若形容詞之原級而以二子音終，或以單子音終而其前有兩母音先立者，則加 *er* 以成比較級，加 *est* 以成最高級：—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Small 小	smaller 更小	smallest 最小
Thick 厚	thicker	thickest
Great 大	greater	greatest
Deep 深	deeper	deepest

(b) 若形容詞原級之字尾爲一子音，且此子音之前爲短母音所先立者，則加 *er* 及 *est* 時，其字尾之子音宜重複之：—

Thin 薄	thinner 更薄	thinnest 最薄
Fat 肥	fatter	fattest
Hot 熱	hotter	hottest
Wet 濕	wetter	wettest.

(c) 若原級之字尾爲 *e*，則僅加 *r* 及 *st* 而已，而非 *er est*：—

Brave 勇敢	braver 更勇	bravest 最勇
Wise 賢	wiser	wisest
True 真	tru	truest

(d) 至原級字尾爲 *y*，且 *y* 之前爲子音，則加 *er* 及 *est* 時，宜變 *y* 爲 *i*：—

Happy 幸福	happier 更幸	happiest 最幸
Dry 乾燥	drier	driest

(e) 若 *y* 之前爲母音，則 *y* 宜仍之而不變：—

Gay 華麗	gay ^r 更麗	gayest 最麗
Grey 灰色	grey ^r	greyest

133. 形容詞中，有由不規則以成比較級及最高級之形者：—

Bad, ill, evil 惡	worse 更惡	worst 最惡
Fore 前	former	foremost, first
Good	better	best
Hind 後	hinder	hindmost
Late 遲	later, latter	latest, last
Little 少	less	least
Much (quantity) 多	more	most
Many (number) 多	more	most
Nigh 近	nigher	nighest, next
Old 老	older, elder	oldest, eldest

於此有六個副詞而爲原級，然可令之爲形容詞，而成比較級及最高級之比較：—

Forth 前	further 更前	furthest 最前
Far 遙遠	farther	farthest
In 內	inner	innermost, inmost
Out 外	outer, utter	uttermost, utmost
Be-neath 下	nether	nethermost
Up 上	upper	uppermost

名詞之“top,”而用於形容詞時，其最高級爲“topmost.”至於比較級則無之。

134. **Positive Degree 原級**：——關於有均一性質之二人或二物者，其原級可用 *as.....as*，或同樣之句：—

This boy is *as* clever *as* that. (此童子之聰穎適與彼童子同)

This boy is *no less* clever *than* that. (此童子之聰穎不減於彼童子)

That boy is *not more* clever *than* this. (彼童子之聰穎不勝於此童子)

135. **Comparative Degree 比較級**：——關於非均一性

質之二人或二物者，可用比較級：一

(a) This boy is more clever or cleverer *than* that.

(此童子之聰穎勝過彼童子)

(b) This boy is *the* cleverer *of the two*.

(此童子是兩人中之較伶俐者)

備考 1.—(a) 形與 (b) 形非全是同一意義。(a) 形單示一童子優於他童子，(b) 形則示兩者比較中而選擇其一。

備考 2.—次舉之例文，每見學者於比較級之次而誤用 “from” 以代 “than,” 此不可不留意。

This boy is cleverer *from* me.

My book is more instructive *from* yours.

Work is more healthy *from* idleness.

學者若能時時記憶 “than” 爲通常接續詞，“from” 爲前置詞，斯不蹈於前例文之誤矣。

This boy is clever *than* I (am).

(此童子聰穎過我)

My book is more instructive *than* yours (is instructive).

(吾之書有益過汝之書)

Work is more healthy *than* idleness (is healthy).

(勞働是健康過賴怠)

136. **Superlative Degree 最高級**：一凡示一人或一物之優於其同類中之一切者，其最高級可用 *than.....of*.

This boy is *the* cleverest *of* all.

(此童子是一切童子中之最聰明者)

備考 1.—最高級亦可用比較級而表之，茲揭其法爲下：一

This boy is more clever *than all other boys*.

(此童子聰明過其他一切之童子)

用此法時最要留意而莫脫漏“*other*”字，否則僅云“*this boy is more clever than all boys*”（此童子聰明於一切童子），則全無意義，何則，蓋“*this boy*”者，亦“*all boys*”中之人也。“*other*”可棄之，其結果將成“*this boy*”聰明於“*this boy*”，即甲聰明於甲矣。寧有是理乎。

註。一然設云“*This boy is more clever than all the girls.*”（此童子聰明過一般女子），則雖不用“*other*”，而亦自成最高級之意。蓋此雖無“*other*”，然“*this boy*”之非“*all the girls*”中之人可新然矣。

備考 2. 一有時為強其語勢，則形容詞之“*very*”（寔際或寔寔之意），可以置入於“*the*”及最高級等字之間。

He is *the very best* scholar in our class.

（他是實我等之班中最良學生）

137. Latin Comparative 拉丁語之比較級；——於此有比較級而直採用于拉丁語而成者，其一切之字尾皆為 *or* 而非 *er*；又接於其後之字，亦全以 *to* 代 *than*。

His strength is *superior to* (greater than 之意) mine.

（他之力勝過我之力）

His strength is *inferior to* (less than 之意) mine.

（他之力劣於我之力）

This event is *anterior to*

（此事先於彼事）

This event is *prior to*

（此事先於彼事）

} (earlier than 之意) that.

This event is *posterior to* (later than 之意) that.

（此事後於彼事）

This man is *senior to* (old than 之意) that.

(此人年老於彼人)

This man is *junior to* (young than 之意) that.

(此人年少於彼人)

138. Comparative which have lost their force 比較級之失其効力：—

(a) 拉丁語之比較級：—*interior* (內部), *exterior* (外部), *ulterior* (外), *major* (多), *minor* (少). 此等形容詞并不接之以 *to*, 但用之恰如原級之形容詞耳：—

A fact of *minor* (secondary 之意) importance.

(第二段之緊要事件)

He had an *ulterior* (further 之意) purpose in doing this.

(他爲此事中便有他目的)

The *interior* (inside 之意) part of a building.

(建築物之內部)

此等辭亦可以用之如名詞：—

He is a *minor*. (丁年以下之人)

(彼是一未丁年者)

He is a *major*. (武官)

(他是一陸軍少佐)

The *interior* of the room was well furnished.

(室內已甚完備先)

(b) 英語之比較級：—*former* (先), *latter* (後), *elder* (年老), *hinder* (後), *inner* (內), *outer* (外), *upper* (上), *nether* (下), 此等形容詞并不用 *than* 以接其後：—

The *former* and the *latter* rain.—*Old Testament*.

(先雨與後雨)

The *inner* meaning; the *outer* surface.

(內部之意義) (外面)

The *upper* and the *nether* mill-stone.

(上下之磨石)

Elder 與 *elders* 亦可以用之如名詞。(一人用 *elder* 二人, 用 *elders*) 以表高官之人或高齡之人 如:—“the village elders.” (村鄉之長老)

1.9. Distinction of meaning 意義之區別:—如 (a) *eldest*, 與 *oldest*, (b) *farther* 與 *further*, (c) *later* 與 *latter*, (d) *nearest* 與 *next*, 等辭. 其意義之差異處, 學者不可不注意.

- (a) { My *eldest* son died at the age of twelve.
(余之長男十二歲而夭死)
He is the *oldest* of my surviving sons.
(他是吾之生存兒子中之最長子)

上文之 “*eldest*” 爲第一出生之意, 單用於人類. *Oldest* 用於人及物, 且表年齡最高之意; 如 “that is the *oldest* tree in the grove.” (彼是在小樹林內之最老樹)

- (b) { Benares is *farther* from Calcutta than Patna is.
(由加爾各搭到波羅奈斯遠於到華氏城)
The *further* end of the room. (房之遠端)
A *further* reason exists. (其他存立之理由)

上文之 “*farther*” (*far* 之比較級) 比較所向於兩地方之距離, 而 “*further*” (*forth* 之比較級) 表「上面」或「前面」之事物.

- (c) { This is the *latest* news. (此是最近之新聞)
This is the *last* boy in the class. (此是班中最低位之童子)

“Later” 及 “latest” 表時候；“latter” 及 “last” 表位置。

- (d) { This street is the *nearest* to my house.
 (此是最近於余家之街)
 This house is *next* to mine.
 (此屋是吾家之第二間)

“Nearest” 是示空間或距離，故上文之意義，即 “此街比於他街較近於余家” 但 “next” 表順序或地位，故上文之意義，即 “惟吾之屋與此屋最近，無別屋界於其間。”

Chapter IV. 第四編

PRONOUNS. 代名詞

140. Pronoun defined 代名詞之定義：——代名詞者，名詞或同等名詞之代用辭也。

欲知代名詞之在文章上爲如何之關係，是莫善於一試：—

John saw a snake in the garden, *this snake* John thought would hurt *John*, unless *John* killed *the snake* with a stick, *this stick* John had in *John's* hand.

上文之屢用名詞，斯亦不妥之甚矣。然設將其草體名詞而換以代名詞，則其辭句之佳，自當倍徙：—

John saw a snake in the garden, *which* he thought would hurt *him*, unless *he* killed *it* with a stick *which* he had in *his* hand.

(約翰見一蛇於園中，他以為若不以其手中之棍擊殺之，則恐其將傷於彼)
觀此，是代名詞之重要用處，不外避却名詞之重複也。

140. 由前之定義而言，爰生下文之三種事寔：一

(a) 代名詞者，代用乎名詞，或原身名詞，否亦須同等名詞。

(b) 代名詞者，代用先立之名詞也。故定例必經有名詞之已記載於前時乃用代名詞。否則無所用之也。

(c) 代用名詞者，代用乎名詞也。故其代用辭須與其名詞同一之數性及人稱。

142. 代名詞分四種如左：一

(1) **Personal** 人代名詞；如 *I, thou, he, she, one*, 等。

(2) **Demonstrative** 指示代名詞；如, *this, that, such*, 等。

(3) **Relative** 複騰代名詞；如, *which, who, that, as*, 等。

(4) **Interrogative** 疑問代名詞；如, *who? which? what?* 等。

§ I 章一. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

人代名詞

143. 人代名詞何以名，以其代表三位之人也。

(a) **The first** 第一之稱者，指現言之人也；如, *I* (余) *we* (我等), *myself* (余自己)：一

I (現言之人) will do all *I* can to win a prize at the end of the year. (本學期終，余將極力求期得其賞格)

(b) **The Second** 第二人稱者，指對言之人也；如，*thou* (汝)，*you* (汝等)，*thyself* (汝自己)：—

You (對言及之人) should leave off this habit of idleness.

(汝應棄此怠惰之習慣)

(c) **The third** 第三人稱者，指引而言之人也；如，*he* (彼男)，*she* (彼女)，*it* (其)，*himself* (彼男自己)，*herself* (彼女自己) *itself* (其事物自己)：—

He (引而言之人) did a good day's work with his tutor.

(他與其師做充分一日之工)

114. **Forms of Personal Pronoun** 人代名詞之形：——
人代名詞性數及位，皆與名詞同一致。

I. 第一人稱，男性及陰性。

Case. 位	Singular, 單數	Plural. 複數
<i>Nominative</i> (主位)	I. (余)	we. (我等)
<i>Possessive</i> (領位)	my, mine. (我的)	Our, ours. (我等的)
<i>Objective</i> (賓位)	me. (余)	Us. (我們)

II. 第二人稱，陽性或陰性

Case.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nominative</i>	Thou (汝)	ye or you. (汝們)
<i>Possessive</i>	Thy, thine. (汝的)	your, yours. (汝等的)
<i>Objective</i>	Thee. (汝)	you. (汝們)

III. 第三人稱，一切之性

Case.	Singular.			Plural.
	Masculine. 陽性	Feminine. 陰性	Neuter. 中性	
<i>Nominative...</i>	He (他)	She (彼女)	it (彼)	They (彼等)
<i>Possessive.....</i>	His (他的)	Her or hers (彼女の)	its (彼の)	Their or theirs (他們的)
<i>Objective.....</i>	Him 他)	Her (彼女)	it (彼)	them 彼等

145. Two Forms of Possessive 二種之領位形：——人代名詞有二種之領位形：—

	Singular.	Plural.
第一形	Ny Thy Her	Our Your Their
第二形	Mine Thine Hers	Ours Yours Theirs

第一形之用法，是領位置於名詞之前，其恰似形容詞之作用以形容名詞：—

This is *my* book (此是余之書). That is *their* house (彼處是他們之屋)

第二形 (a) 代名詞與名詞為動詞所中分. (b) 名詞之省略. (c) 代名詞之前有先立前置詞之 *of*：—

(a) This book is *mine*. That house is *theirs*.
(此書是余的) (彼屋是他們的)

(b) My horse and *yours* (your house) are both tired.
(吾之馬與汝之馬皆疲矣)

(c) That horse of *yours* is tired.

備考 1.—“Hers,” “ours,” “yours,” “theirs,” 等字尾之 s 爲領位之記號，以實際上論之，此等辭實爲雙領位 (Double Possessive) 如 “of yours” 句之 “of” 是示同位也。(參照 § 67).

備考 2.—韻文中有以 “mine” “thine” 與 “thy” 同一用法，以置於名詞之前，但除用於其次之名詞以母音爲起端外，蓋屬罕見，此是用爲分離其兩母音之音韻也。

Look through *mine eyes* with *thine*.—*Tennyson*.

(以汝之透觀吾之眼)

Who knowth the power of *thine anger*?—*Old Testament*.

(何人知汝之怒勢乎)

146, Reflexive Personal Pronouns 反身人代名詞：
——此是加 “self” 或 “own” 於人代名詞以成形。

I. 第一人稱

Case.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom. or Obj.</i>	Myself 余自己	Ourselves 我等自己
<i>Possessive</i>	My or mine own	Our own

II. 第二人稱

Case.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom. or Obj.</i>	Thyself 汝自己	Yourselves 汝等自己
<i>Possessive</i>	Thy or thine or own.	Your own

III. 第三人稱

Case.	Singular.			Plural.
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	All genders.
<i>Nom. or Obj.</i>	Himself	Herself	Itself	Themselves
<i>Possessive ...</i>	His own	Her own	Its own	Their own

147. **Uses of Reflexive Forms 反身代名詞之用法：**
 ——代名詞之反身形，有兩目的之作用；(a) 示人或物所爲之事有關其本身者，(b) 用之以強代名詞之意義。

*Examples of (a) (例)**Singular.**Plural.*

I hid myself.

We hid ourselves.

(余隱余自己)

I hit my own head.

We hit our own head.

(余打余自己之頭)

Thou lovest thine own.

You love your own work.

work. (汝愛汝自己之事業)

The cat seated itself.

The cat seated themselves.

(貓自己坐)

*Examples of (b) (例)**Singular.**Plural.*

I myself saw the horse.

We ourselves saw it.

(余自己見過其馬)

Thou thyself sawest the house. You yourselves saw it.

He himself (或 she herself)

They themselves saw it.

saw it. (他自己見過它)

The wall itself fell.

The walls themselves fell.

(其牆自己倒下)

試插入代名詞於下文各名詞之位：—

(a) I told Ram that the snake seen by *Ram* in the garden would do *Ram* no harm, if *Ram* left the *snake* alone, to go *the snake's* own way.

(b) The girl went into the green field, and there *the girl* saw the sheep and lambs, as *the sheep and lambs* played about ⁱn the field.

(c) A man brought round some wild beasts for a show. Among *the beasts* there was an elephant. *The man* threw cakes at *the elephant*, and *the elephant* caught the *cakes* in *the elephant's* trunk.

(d) A dog carrying an umbrella for *the dog's* master. Some boys tried to take away *the umbrella* from *the dog*. But *the dog* was too quick for *the boys*. *The dog* ran past *the boys* at full speed, and carried *the umbrella* safely out of *the boys'* reach.

(e) When the camel is being loaded, *the camel* kneels down, so that the load may be put on *the camels* back. *The camel* loves men. if *men* treat *the camel* well.

(f) The bees are flying towards the flowers. *The bees* suck *the flowers*, and fill *the bees'* bags with honey.

(g) Wolves hunt in large packs, and when *wolves* are pressed by hunger, *wolves* become very fierce, and will

attack men and eat *men* up greedily.

(h) A horse cannot defend *a horse* against wolves; but *a horse* can run from *wolves*, and *wolves* are not always able to catch *a horse*.

答案及譯解

(a) I.....by *him* would do *him* no.....if *he* left *it* alone... go *its* way.

(翻譯在園中見一蛇，余謂他若聽其自行其路，則無害他)

(b) The girl.....there *she* saw.....as *they* played.

(彼女往於綠野，他見大羊與小羊在其處戲遊)

(c) A man.....show among *them*.....there.....elephant *He* threw.....elephant *which* caught *them* in *its* trunk.

(一人携來若干野獸而供人觀看，就中有一象，彼投餅物於象食，該畜則以其鼻而拾取之)

(d) A dog.....an.....for *his* master. Some.....take *it* from *him*. But *he* was.....for *them*. *He* ran.....past *them*speed.....out of *their* reach.

(一犬啣一洋傘於其主人，有若干童子試由犬口取其傘，但犬太快見得他們，彼乃以充分之速力從他們處走過，於是得啣其傘而免脫他們之追而無所失)

(e) When.....loaded, *it* kneels.....on *its* back. *It* lovesif *they* treat *it* well.

(駱駝負載貨物時，而以其膝跪下，如是則可以置貨物於其背上，他們皆愛彼彼亦愛他們)

(f) The bees.....flowers. *They* such *them*.....fill *their* bags. (蜜蜂飛來花處，彼吸其花而以密糖充滿其袋)

(g) Wolves.....when *they* are.....hunger *they* become...
eat *them* up greedily.

(狼結隊而狩食，當其迫於飢餓時，彼等則變為甚兇惡，於是將襲擊人而食之)

(h) A horse.....defined *itself* against.....but *it* can.....
from *them* and *they* are.....catch *it*.

(馬不能防禦狼而安全其身，但其能走避彼等，而彼等常不能捕他)

§ 2 章二. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

指示代名詞

148. 指示代名詞者，指示句首之名詞而代其用也。

句首之名詞而被指示者，謂之先行辭 Antecedent.

149. Forms of Demonstrative Pronouns 指示代名詞之形：——屬於此種之重要代名詞，為 *this* (此)，*that* (彼)，*these* (此等)；*those* (彼等)，*one* (有一個)，*ones* (有等)，*none* (無一個)，*such* (如斯)。

學者得毋有疑於此種之代名詞，而與前章之指示形容詞相混乎，然其正自有別。茲定其界說如左。

(a) 以上諸等辭，若有名詞以緊接其後，否亦含有省畧名詞之意者，是謂之指示形容詞。

(b) 以上諸等辭，若用為先立名詞之代用辭，且別無寫出名詞或省畧名詞以接其後者，是謂之指示代名詞。

(a) He came to my house *one* day. (他有日來吾家)

此 *one* 是無定指示形容詞而形容名詞之 “*day*.”

(b) Your coat is black; mine is a white *one*.

(汝之外套是黑色；吾之是白的)

此 *one* 是代名詞以代用先立名詞之 “coat,” 且爲形容詞之 “white” 所形容。

150. **He, She, It, They.** 一指示代名詞之最簡單形者；*he, she, it, they*, 是也。

此四辭原來名爲“人代名詞，”蓋因其由第一第二人稱以區別出而成第三人稱，且“*he*”“*she*”及有時“*the*,” 其實際上爲關係於人類，而非關係於事物者。

然則何以名此等辭爲指示代名詞乎，蓋因其指示先行之名詞，且於此而爲其名詞之代用也。

(1) My father has gone; we saw *him* start a short time ago. (此 *him* 是一指示代名詞，而爲其先行名詞 “father” 之代用辭) (吾父不在我等見其去了未久)

(2) My mother came yesterday; we were glad to see *her* (此 *her* 是一指示代名詞，而爲其先行名詞 “mother” 之代用辭) (吾母昨日來到；我等歡喜見他)

(3) The sun has risen; *it* shines brightly. (此 *it* 是一指示代名詞，而爲其先行名詞 “sun” 之代用辭) (日已昇矣；其照燦爛)

(4) The travellers fell asleep as soon as *they* arrived. (此 *they* 亦是一指示代名詞，而爲其先行名詞 “travellers”. 之代用辭) (諸人一到時便睡去)

151. **It.** 一此代名詞之用法有三；如：一

(a) 指示先行之名詞。用於此法，不外如普通指示代名詞之用法：——

The sun is risen *it* (=the sun) shines brightly.

(a) 指示先行之節；如：一

I have treated him as he deserved ; and he knows *it*.

(此 *it* 是指前節之 “I have treated him as he deserved.”)

(余待他以相當之禮, 彼亦知之)

(c) 指示續後之句或節 ; 如 :—

{ *It is sad to hear such bad news.* (句)
 { *It—即 to hear such bad news—is sad.*

(如此惡消息, 聞者生悲)

{ *It is probable that it will rain to-day.* (節)
 { *It—即 that it will rain to-day—is probable.*

(今日實有雨落)

152. *This, that, these, those.*—此等辭之屬於代名詞之用法如左 :—

(a) 若前文或前節有兩名詞, 則 *this* 指示最近一個, 而 *that* 指示前一個 :—

(1) Work and play are both necessary to health; *this* (=play) gives us rest, and *that* (=work) gives us energy. (勞働與遊戲, 皆為衛生上所必要; 此(遊戲)則使吾人休養彼(勞働)則使吾人強壯)

(2) Dogs are more faithful animals than cats; *these* (=cats) attach themselves to places, and *those* (=dogs) to persons. (犬比於貓較為忠實之畜類; 此等(貓)親於其住所, 彼等(犬)親於人)

以上第一例之 “*this*,” 不是詳論為如何之 play, 或何種之 play 也, 其純然置之以為 play 之代用辭耳. 是則此字確為指示代名詞, 而非指示形容詞矣. 他節亦可以依此例以解之.

(b) *That* 與 *those* 為代用先行之單獨名詞 :—

- (1) The air of the hills is cooler than *that* (=the air) of the plain. (邱陵之空氣, 冷於平原的)
- (2) The houses of the rich are larger than *those* (=the houses) of the poor. (富者之屋, 大過貧人的)

以上第一例之“*that*,”原非形容詞以詳論爲如何之 air 或何種之 air, 不過指示一般之 air, 且置此以爲名詞之代用辭耳。故亦爲代名詞而非形容詞。

(c) **This** 與 **that** 亦可以代用前節或前文:—

- (1) I studied Greek and Latin when I was young, and *that* (=I studied Greek and Latin) at Oxford.

(余少年時研究希臘及拉丁語, 此寔在於亞斯佛大學時事也)

此例則用“*that*”以代用“*I studied Greek and Latin*”一節, 此不第免却此文之記述兩次已也, 蓋更用之以益強“*at Oxford*”之意義。

- (2) Make the best use of your time at the school; *that's* a wise boy. (善用汝之光陰於學校; 此是爲賢兒)

此例之“*that*”與“*one who makes the best use of his time at school*”同。用此“*that*”以代用之, 遂能免其一切文語之反覆, 以成此含蓄之文。

- (3) You paid your debts; and *this* (=the payment of your debts) is quite sufficient to prove your honesty.

(汝償汝之債; 此是足証汝之忠實)

153. **One, ones.** — 此兩辭亦爲指示先行名詞, 但先行辭爲單數則用“*one*;”若爲複數則用“*ones*”:—

- (1) He gained a prize last year; but he did not gain *one*
 (=a prize) this term (單數)
 (他去年曾得一賞格; 但此番不曾得其一)
- (2) There were six lazy boys and four industrious *ones*
 (=boys) in our class. (複數)
 (我等之級中有六位之怠惰生與四位之勤學生)

154. **Such, So.**—“Such” 可以代表單複兩數:—

- (1) He is the judge appointed to hear the case, and as
such (=as the appointed judge) you must not speak
 to him before the trial. (單數)

(他是任命爲裁判官以聽訟, 如此判官, 於未開審以前, 汝切莫對他言)

- (2) Kings are constituted *such* (=Kings) by law, and
 should be obeyed. (複數)

(國王依法律而設定, 故人民應服從之)

“So” 有時用於可以用 “such” 之處; 但 “so” 爲指示
 副詞, 而非指示代名詞:—

My business is urgent, and I hope you will treat it *so*
 (=as urgent) (余之事業甚緊要, 余望汝處理之亦如此)

Is he an enemy? He is *so* (=an enemy).
 (他是讐敵乎) (他是讐敵)

Examples for Practice (練習之例)

試指出下文各草体字之孰爲指示形容詞, 及孰爲指示代名
 詞:—

- (1) *This* horse is stronger than *that*.
- (1) Health is of more value than money; *this* cannot give such true happiness as *that*.
- (3) I prefer a white house to a black one.
- (4) You will repent of this *one* day, when it is too late.
- (5) You have kept you promise; *this* was all that I asked for.
- (6) The faithfulness of a dog is greater than *that* of a cat.
- (7) *One* Mr. B. helped his friend in need *that* was a true friend.
- (8) Return to your work, and *at.....that* immediately.
- (9) Bring me *that* book, and leave *this* where it is.
- (10) The step you have taken is *one* of much risk.
- (11) *Such* a book as yours deserves to be well read.
- (12) Prosperous men are much exposed to flattery; for *such* alone can be made to pay for it.
- (13) Prosperous men are not always more happy than unlucky *ones*.
- (14) A pale right, like *that* of the rising moon, begins to fringe horizon.
- (15) Will you ride *this* horse or *that*?
- (16) A stranger could not be received twice as *such* in the same house.
- (17) The plan you have chosen does not seem to me to be a wise *one*.

(18) *One man says this, another that; whom should I believe?*

答案及譯解

1. *this* 指示形容詞 *that* 是形容省畧名詞 *horse* 之指示形容詞。
(此馬強於彼馬)
2. *this* 爲名詞 *money* 之代用辭, *that* 爲名詞 *health* 之代用辭, 兩者皆指示代名詞也。
(康健是更有價值於金錢; 此不能如彼之爲真幸福也)
3. *one* 爲 *horse* 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
(余寧愛白馬過於黑馬)
4. *one* 是形容名詞 *day* 之無定指示形容詞。
(汝將悔此一日, 然至其時則已晚矣)
5. *this* 爲 *you have kept your promise* 一節之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
(汝能守汝之約, 是即余所切求於汝者也)
6. *that* 爲名詞 *faithfulness* 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
(犬之忠實, 遠勝於貓)
7. *one* 是形容名詞 *Mr. B.* 之無定指示形容詞, *that* 是 *he who helps his friend in need* 之含蓄文 (*implied sentence*) 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
(一人名 *B.* 氏者, 救助其被迫於困窮之友; 如此可謂其真友矣)
8. *that* 爲 *return to your work* 一節之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
(汝可再就汝之專業, 且宜即刻爲之)
9. *that* 與 *this* 皆爲形容 *book* 之指示形容詞. (*this* 所形容之 *book* 是書畧)
(拿彼書來余, 而此書可置於原處)
10. *one* 爲名詞 *step* 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
(汝所踏之地步, 是危險之地步也)
11. *such* 是形容名詞 *book* 之有定指示形容詞。
(如汝所有之書, 是有可讀之價值)
12. *such* 爲附加形容詞名詞之 *prosperous men* 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
(富貴利達之人, 多受人之詬謔; 因此等人獨能與其以報酬也)

13. ones 爲名詞 men 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
 (富貴利達之人之幸福, 嘗不能如貧窮者之多)
14. that 爲附加形容詞之名詞之 pale light 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
 (蒼白光之昇月, 始放彩於天涯)
15. this 與 that 皆是形容 horse 之指示形容詞。(that 次位之 horse 是省畧)
 (君乘此馬乎, 抑彼馬乎)
16. such 爲 stranger 之代用辭, 指示代名詞也。
 (生面之人(不相識者), 不能于同一之家屋而受兩次之待遇)
17. one 爲 plan 之代用辭, 指示代名詞。
 (汝所選定之計畫, 與余之妙計不同)
18. one 是形容名詞 man 之指示形容詞也。this 與 that 所形容之名詞爲省畧, 亦指示形容詞也。
 (一人之言如此, 他人之言如彼; 吾將奚其適從)

155. Indefinite Demonstrative Pronouns 無定指示代名詞:——指示代名詞有時用于無定指示者, 此等用法, 蓋非爲現於文面上名詞之代用辭, 爲省畧或含蓄名詞之代用辭耳。

(a) They. — 此代名詞是用於一般之人或特別之人而故意隱其名者:—

(1) They say (=men in general say) that truth and honesty is the best policy.

[人亦有言(一般人之言), 誠寔與忠厚, 是爲最良之處世方].

(2) They told me (=some person or persons whom I do not wish to name, told me), that you were guilty of theft. [某人(人之不欲言其名者)對余言, 謂汝犯有盜竊之罪].

(b) One. — 此代名詞常用於“不拘何人”及“各人”之意:—

One should take care of one's health = A *man* (any and every man) should take care of *his* health.

(凡人應注意於其衛生)

備考 1.—“*One*” 爲動詞之主辭時，則接其後者當亦用 “*one*” 而不能用 “*he*.” 故設云 “*one* must take care of *his* health” 斯不合矣。

備考 2.—*None* (=no one) 爲文章之主辭時，則接其後之動詞當爲單數：—

None but the brave deserves the fair. —*Dryden.*

(惟此勇者足以配此美人)

但 *none* 爲表多數之人或數物時，則接其後之動詞當爲復數：—

None of my lost books were found.

(余所失去之書無一尋得着)

(c) **It.**—此代名詞之不定用法，其數，人稱，性，皆背諸規則而用，此則僅可歸於 *idiom* (慣用語) 耳。

Who is it? (背於性之規則，即以無性代名詞之 *it* 而指人)

(他是誰)

It is I. (背於性及人稱之規則，以第三人稱無性代名詞而指 I)

(是余)

It is you. (背於數，性及人稱之規則，即以 *it* 而指 you.)

(是汝)

No; it is he. (背於性之規則)

(是他)

“*It*” 之作用，有令其後之名詞或代名詞以強其意義者，舉其例如左：—

It was I who told you that. (告彼於汝者余也)

It is the men who work hardest, not woman.

(爲過度之勞働者是男子，而非女子)

It was the queen who died yesterday.

(昨日死者, 女王也)

It is little things that chiefly disturb the mind.

(常苦人心者, 細小之事也)

有時 “it” 代用乎名詞, 則前後之文勢可以省畧:—

It is raining=rain is raining or falling. (雨降矣)

It is blowing hard=the wind is blowing hard. (風猛吹矣)

It is fine to-day=the weather is fine to-day. (今日好天氣)

It is hot=the air is hot. (空氣熱)

It is cold=the air is cold. (空氣冷)

It is still early=the hour is still early. (時尚早)

It is two miles from here=the distance is two miles.

(二里距離)

It was autumn=the season of the year was autumn.

(年之季節者秋也)

有時 “it” 用爲人代名詞之代用辭, 以表親愛或輕侮之意:—

What a pretty little girl *it* is (=she is)! (親愛之意)

(彼少女者, 何其可愛乎)

What an ass *it* is (=that man is)! (輕侮之意)

(彼人者何其痴乎)

§ 3 章三. RELATIVE OR CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

複牒或接續代名詞

156. 複牒代名詞者, 其指示先行名詞, 與指示代名詞同作用也. 然其所以異者, 以其有連絡兩節文之能力耳. (此則指示代名詞無此作用). 蓋複牒代名詞, 寔代名詞與接續詞二者相合而成, 故亦可以稱爲接續代名詞 (參照 § 18).

This is a good house ; I live in *it*. (指示代名詞)

(此間好屋乃吾所住之)

此兩文可以聯合之如左：—

This house, in *which* I live, is a good one. (複牒代名詞)

157. **Who, which.**—複牒代名詞最普通用者爲 *who* 或 *which*.

Case.	Singular and Plural.	Singular and Plural.
	Masculine and Feminine.	Neuter.
<i>Nominative</i>	Who	Which
<i>Possessive</i>	Whose	Whose or of which
<i>Objective</i>	Whom	Which

“Of which” 爲中性領位之通常形，惟 *whose* 是常用於韻文中，或有時用於散文中。

試指出下文之複牒代名詞所複牒之先行辭：—

- (1) We love those persons *who* are kind to us.
- (2) The pen *whose* point was broken has been mended.
- (3) The ground *which* we dig will bear a fine crop.
- (4) That is the man *whom* we saw yesterday.
- (5) Is this a dagger *which* I see before me?
- (6) We left the house in *which* we had long lived.
- (7) He lost the box of clothes *which* I brought.
- (8) The child *whose* parents are dead is an orphan.

答案及譯解

- (1) Who 之先行辭 person.
(我等愛愛我等之人)
- (2) Whose 之先行辭 pen.
(既壞之鉄筆嘴皆已復修好)
- (3) Which 之先行辭 ground.
(我等所澗之地將生好禾麥)
- (4) Whom 之先行辭 man.
(彼人余昨日見過)
- (5) Which 之先行辭 dagger.
(此匕首是余前所見者乎)
- (6) Which 之先行辭 house.
(我等久居之屋今已退出)
- (7) Which 之先行辭 box.
(他失去余所携來之衣箱)
- (8) Which 之先行辭 child.
(無父母之小孩子稱曰孤哀子)

備考。一陽性及陰性之形，即 who (主位) whose (賓位) whom (領位) 是僅用於人類。中性之形，即 which (主位) whose 或 of which (賓位) which (領位) 是用於無性物及人類 (男人女人) 以外一切之動物。

試改正下文之誤用：一

- (1) The bird *who* sings. (2) The man *which* came. (3) The ape *who* climbs the tree. (4) The horse *who* carried me. (5) The girls *which* sing. (6) The ox *who* draws the plough. (7) The man *which* drives the ox.

答 案

(1) The bird *which* sings. (2) The man *who* came. (3) The ape *which* climbs the tree. (4) The horse *which* carried me. (4) The girl *who* sings. (5) The ox *which* draws the plough. (7) The man *who* drives the ox.

試置入複牒代名詞於下文以代指示代名詞：—

- (1) This is the house; Jack built *it*.
- (2) This is the man; I read *his* book.
- (3) The boy has come; *he* lost his hat.
- (4) The girl has come; you were looking for *her*.
- (5) These are the trees; *their* leaves have fallen.
- (6) These men have gone; the box was stolen by *them*.

答 案 及 譯 解

- (1) This is the house *which** Jack built.
(此屋是職克所建造)
- (2) This is the man *whose* book I read.
(余讀此書之領主此人是也)
- (3) The boy *who* lost his hat has come.
(既失其帽之童子已來)
- (4) The girl *whom* you were looking for has come.
(汝所探之少女已來)
- (5) These are the trees *whose* leaves fallen.
(此樹已落其樹葉)

* 或用 *that*.

(6) These men by *whom* the box was stolen have gone.
 (竊箱之人已逃)

153. Clauses as Antecedent 節爲先行辭：——複牒
 代名詞之 *who* 或 *which*, 有以節爲其先行辭：—

*You have paid your debts which (=the fact that you have
 paid your debts) is a clear proof of your honesty.*
 (汝能償汝之債, 是爲汝忠實之左証)

159. Antecedent understood 先行辭之省畧：——複牒
 代名詞有時舍其先行辭於其內或省略之者。

(a) *who* 用於 *he who*, 或 *she who*, 或 *they who* 之意
Who (=he who) steals my purse, steals trash.

—*Shakespeare.*

(彼盜吾銀包者盜無益物耳)

Whom (=those persons whom) the gods love, die young.

—*Proverb.*

(神所愛之人天死)

(b) *What* 用於 the thing, *which*, 或 the things *which*
 之意。

I cannot tell you now what (=the things which) happened.
 (余不能告汝今有何事出來)

The laws are what (=the things which) you say they are
 (汝所說者不違于法律)

(c) *So*, *ever*, 或 *soever*, 而加於複牒代名詞或複牒副詞
 時, 則生全体之意義 (§ 18. 3):—

*Whosoever (=any and every person who) breaks this law
 will be punished, wherever (in any and every place
 where) he may live.*

(犯此法律者，無論何人及居於何地，皆拘而罰之)

備考.—“*What*” “*whatever*” 及 *whichever* 等辭，亦可以用名詞以接其後；但在此等用法，此辭非爲代用辭，故不得認之爲真代用辭，惟形容詞耳。

Be thankful for *what help* or *whatever help* (=any all help which you have received. (汝不拘受如何之幫助，應感謝之)

Take *whichever book* (=that book of all others which) you prefer. (取汝所選之書)

160. **That.**—“*that*” 屢用爲代 “*who*” “*whom*” 或 “*which*,” 但不代 “*whose*” 耳。

This is the house *that* (=which) Jack built.

The man *that* (=whom) we were looking for has come.

161. **As.**—“*as*” 若有 “*such*,” 或 “*as*,” 或 “*the same*” 先立時，則可用於複牒代名詞。故 “*as*” 可用於主位，賓位，但不能用於領位耳。

This is not *such* a good book *as* I expected.

(此是非余所希望之好書)。此 *as* 是動詞 *expected* 之賓位。

As many men *as* came were caught.

(所來多少人皆被捕)。此 *as* 是動詞 *came* 之主位。

Yours is not *the same* book *as* mine (is).

(汝之書不與我的同)，此 *as* 是省畧於 *mine* 之後之動詞 *is* 之完成辭，叙述辭主位也。

凡在 “*such*” 與 “*as*” 之後，大都全用 “*as*.” 但在 “*the same*” 之後，則用 “*that*” 較爲普通。

This is *the same* story *that* (=which) I heard ten years ago. (此同樣之話，已於十年前聞之矣)

This is *the same* man *that* (=whom) I saw yesterday.

(此同德之人, 余昨日已見之矣)

備考. 一凡 “the same” 之後而用 “that” 或 “as” 時, 宜準左之兩規則庶無誤. (1) 其後之動詞是述出, 則大都用 “that;” (2) 若其後之動詞是省畧, 則一般是用 “as.”

(1) This the same man *that* came yesterday. (動詞之述出)

(2) This is not the same book *as* mine (is). (動詞之省畧)

註. 一除前兩例之差異外, 尚有兩差異者如左:——(1) *The same as* 者, the same kind (同類物) 之意; 如, This is *the same man as* I saw yesterday (此是與余昨日所見之同一類似之人) 是也. (2) *the same that* 者, the same identical article (同一物) 之意; 如, This is *the same man that* I saw yesterday (此是即余昨日所見同一之人) 是也.

162. But. 一接續詞之 “but” 用時, 其後之指示代名詞若省畧者, 則是用於 “who not” 或 which not 之意, 即否定複牒代名詞 (negative relative) 之意義也.

There was no one present, *but* saw (=but *he* saw=*who* did not see) the deed. (在其位而不見此行爲者, 蓋無一人焉)

There is no vice so simple, *but* may (=but *it* may=*which* may not) become serious in time.

(未有如此單純之不德, 而不引起重大之結果)

WHO 及 WHICH 之二用法

163. Restrictive 限制的 Continuative 接續的:——複牒代名詞之 “who” 及 “which,” 有二種之用法, 即限制的及連續的是也.

(1) 限制的.—The man *who* lived there died yesterday.

(住於其處之人, 昨日已死去)

(2) 連續的.—I have seen my friend, *who recognised me at once.* (余已遇吾友, 彼一見就認識余)

在 (a) 之複牒節, 對於名詞之 “man” 是有形容詞之効力. 何則, 蓋 “*lived there*” 爲表明此特別之人之住處, 亦即所以限制其適用也.

在 (b) 例複牒節之 “*who recognised me at once,*” 對於名詞之 “friend” 是全無限制之効力, 唯連續前節所言之事耳, 故其全文之意義可詳寫之如左:—

I found my friend, *and he* (= *who recognised me at once.*)
(余已尋得吾友, 他一見就認識余)

備考.—“*who*” 與 “*which,*” 除用於限制的及連續的之兩法外, 尙有二種之意義. 即一含 *Cause* (原因) 之意義, 他含 *Purpose* (目的) 之意義:—

(c) 原因 { *Balbus, who had been found guilty, was hanged.* (巴爾波斯, 彼已被認爲有罪, 故被處絞刑)
同於 *Balbus, because he had been found guilty, was hanged.*

(d) 目的 { *Envoys were sent, who should sue for peace.*
(使臣已遣, 彼可以訴求平和)
同於 *Envoys were sent, that they might sue for peace.*

在 (c) 例及 (d) 例兩複牒節, 既非限制的亦非連續的, 蓋 (c) 例含有所以爲過其事之原因意味, (d) 例含有現爲其事之目的意味, 大與前 (a) (b) 兩文之意味有別.

164. **Who, that**—常用於連續, 原因, 目的之意義之複

牒代名詞者，“who”與“which”是也。至如“that”之複牒代名詞，則必是用於限制的意義，而不用於他意義。故用複牒代名詞於限制意義時，以其用“who”或“which,”不如用“that”較爲普通。

§ 4 章四. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

疑問代名詞

165. 疑問代名詞者，發問之代名詞也。

166. Forms of Interrogative 疑問代名詞之形：—— 疑問代名詞之形有五種：一

Who speak?.....動詞之主位
(誰講乎)

Of *whom* did he speak?前置詞之後之賓位
(彼語誰之事乎)

What did he say?動詞 say 之後之賓位
(彼說何事乎)

Whose book is that?領位
(彼是誰之書乎)

Which of these boys will win the prize? ...選擇主位
(此等童子中何位得賞乎)

167. Which, what, who.—(a) “which” 是用於選擇的意義。(b) “who” 或 “what” 是用於一般之意義：一

(a) *Which* of the these books do you prefer?
(此等書之中汝選何本乎)

(b) *What* is the name of that book? *Who* wrote it?
(彼書是何名乎) (誰著之乎)

- (c) *What* book is that? *Which* book do you like best?
 (彼是何書乎) (汝最好何書乎)

在 (c) 例之 “*what*” 及 “*which*.” 是有名詞以繼其後，故成爲疑問形容詞。（指示辭若依其前後文勢之關係，亦可以同是法而爲指示代名詞或爲指示形容詞）：—

168. 疑問代名詞，其用時各意義之互殊處，學者尤不可不留意辨別。茲舉其例如下：—

- (a) *Who* is he? (彼人是誰)
 (b) *What* is he? (彼是如何之人)
 (c) *Which* is he? (彼是何個人)

在 (a) 例之 “*who*,” 是問人之姓名或家係也。

在 (b) 例之 “*what*,” 是問人之職業或社會上之地位也。例如：— “*what* is he? (彼是如何之人) A pleader (他是律師也)

在 (c) 例之 “*which*,” 是問一群人之特別個人。例如：— “The man who stole my purse is among the prisoners here present: *which* is he? point him out.

(盜余之銀包之人，現已在此囚人中；何一個是，請指出之)

169. *Whether*.—表示二人或兩事物之一之意味者，亦有用複牒代名詞之 “*whether*.” 但此等用法，今已屬於陳腐矣。

Whether of then twain (= *which* of these two men) did the will of his father?—*New Testament*.

(此兩人中何個遵其父之旨乎)

170. *Exclamatory Pronouns* 感嘆代名詞：—— 疑問代名詞之 “*what*,” 可以用於感歎之意義。

- What* folly!
 (何愚乎)
- What* a foolish man he is!
 (彼是如何癡漢哉)

Parsing Model for Nouns, Adjectives and Pronouns.

名詞, 形容詞, 及代名詞, 解剖之模範

The man, that shot four tigers from an elephant's back on his first day of sport, received much praise, which gave him the greatest delight.

(其人出獵之第一日, 就坐象背而射殺四虎, 既受人之頌揚, 彼亦自覺稱快)

The.—Definite demonstrative adjective, 形容名詞之 “man.”

Man.—Common noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, 動詞 “received” 之主辭。

That.—Relative pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person; 與其先行辭 “man” 之性, 數, 及人稱, 爲一致, nominative case. 動詞 “shot” 之主辭。

Shot.—Verb.

Four.—Numeral adjective, cardinal, 形容名詞之 “tigers.”

Tigers.—Common noun, masculine gender, plural number, 動詞 “that” 之主辭。

From.—Preposition, 引 “back” 爲其賓辭。

An.—Indefinite demonstrative adjectives, 形容名詞之 “elephants.”

Elephant's.—Common noun, common gender, singular number, possessive case, 形容名詞之 “back” (§ 114, 4).

Back.—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, 前置詞 “from” 之後之賓辭。

On.—Preposition, 引 “day” 爲其賓辭。

His.—Personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, 與其先行 “man” 之性, 數及人稱, 爲一致, 形容名詞之 “day” (§ 145).

First.—Numeral adjective, ordinal, 形容名詞之 “day.”

Dry.—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, 前置詞 “on” 之後之賓辭。

Of.—Preposition, 引 “sport” 爲其賓辭。

Sport.—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, 前置詞 “of” 之後之賓辭。

Received.—Verb.

Much.—Adjective of quantity, positive degree, 形容名詞之 “praise.”

Praise.—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, 動詞 “received” 之後之賓辭。

Which.—Relative pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, 以 “received much praise” 一節爲其先行辭 (§ 158). nominative case, 動詞 “gave” 之主辭。用於連續的之意義 (§ 163),

Gave.—Verb.

Him.—Personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, 與其先行辭之 “man” 爲一致, 動詞 “gave” 之後之賓辭。 (間接賓辭, 參照 § 177).

Greatest.—Adjective of quality, superlative degree, 形容名詞之 “delight.”

Delight.—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, 動詞 “gave” 第二之賓辭。 (直接賓辭, 參照 § 177)

Chapter V. 第五編

VERBS. 動詞

§ 1 章一. THE KINDS OF VERBS.

動詞之種類

171. **Verb defined** 動詞之定義:——動詞者, 言人物所爲之事也。 (§ 14).

動詞分爲三大類：一

I. Transitive. II. Intransitive. III. Auxiliary.

他動詞

自動詞

助動詞

註。一動詞分爲 transitive (他動詞) intransitive (自動詞) 者，蓋自其用時之意義上分別之耳。若自其變化之形而分別之則有 regular (規則動詞) irregular (不規則動詞) 之別。若更自動詞與動詞之關係而分別之，則有 principal (主動詞) auxiliary (助動詞) 之別。

凡動詞不能盡用於法 (Moods) 及時 (Tenses) 者，是謂之不完全動詞 (Defective)。

172. 動詞之所示之動作，爲不僅止於動者 (agent) 之本身，而尚由動者以施及於他事物者，是謂之他動詞。

(1) The man killed a snake (其人殺一蛇)

(2) I do not know whether he has come. (余不知彼人來否)

註。一在 (1) 例 killed 動詞所示之動作，是由動者之 man 以通遞動者以外之 a snake，故謂之他動詞。在 (2) 例 do not know 動詞所示之動作，亦行及于 whether he has come 之事情，故亦謂之他動詞。

凡人物而居於動者之動作所向之地位者，是謂動詞之賓辭。動詞之賓辭，文法上原有種種之形，已略見於 § 24，茲更於 § 175 而詳論之。

173. 動詞所示之動作，爲僅止於動者之本身，而并不及於他事物者，是謂之自動詞。

Men sleep to preserve life. (人睡所以保養生命也)

此 “sleep” 是爲自動詞。蓋對於此等動詞，無論一語或數語，皆不能用爲其賓辭。

174. 助動詞者 字之用爲幫助各動詞之時以成形，又或變更其意義也。

I *may* sleep (余可以睡). I *will* work (余將做工). You *can* swim (汝能游泳). He *would* learn if he *could* (他若能則學). *Did* you speak? He *should* learn (他宜學).

備考. 一凡動詞而受助動詞之幫助或變更者, 是爲主要動詞 Principal, 故上文第一例中之“sleep”爲主要動詞, 而“may”是助動詞.

註. 一Sleep 與 may sleep 之間, 蓋有意義之差異, speak 與 did speak 之間, 有時之差異, 所以生此差異者, 皆藉助動詞助之耳.

§ 2 章二. TRANSITIVE VERBS.

他 動 詞

175. Forms of the Object 賓辭之形:——他動詞大抵引單獨之賓辭者最多. 動詞之賓辭, 有種種之形, 茲揭其重要者如左:—

- (a) **Noun** (名詞).—The man killed a *snake* with his stick. (彼人以其杖殺一蛇)
- (b) **Pronoun** (代名詞).—The man lifted *me* up out of the water. (彼人從水中救出我)
- (c) **Infinitive** (無定動詞).—He desires *to leave* us tomorrow. (彼願明日別我等)
- (d) **Gerund** (動名詞).—He disliked *sleeping* in the daytime. (彼不喜晝寢)
- (e) **Phrase** (句).—No one knew *how to make a beginning*. (無人知如何作始)
- (f) **Clause** (節).—We do not know *who has come*. (吾等不知誰來)

176. **Positin of the Object 賓辭之位**：——名詞而為動詞之賓辭者，大都在於其動詞之後。但欲強此動詞之語勢，或以複牒代名詞及疑問代名詞為賓辭時，則反不在動詞之後：而均置於動詞之前。

複牒代名詞之例.—The man *whom* I saw yesterday has come back to-day.

(余昨日所見之人，今日已歸來)

疑問代名詞之例.—*What* did you say? (汝何言乎). *Whom* were you looking for?

(汝搜索誰乎)

強語勢之例.—*Silver and gold* have I none; but *what* I have give I unto thee.—*New Testament*.

(銀與金余則無之，但余將以余所有者與汝)

註.—此文若照普通之順序排列之，則同於 I have no silver and gold; But I give unto thee what I have.

177. **The Double Object 複賓辭**：——他動詞有引兩賓辭而在其後者，一常為事物之名，其他則為人或動物之名。

事物之名，是謂之 Direct object 直接賓辭；人或動物之名，是謂之 Indirect object 間接賓辭。

備考.—欲識別此兩賓辭之方法，要注意於間接賓辭之位置，是常在直接賓辭之先，若間接賓辭而置於直接賓辭之後時，則必有“to”或“for”等前置詞為先導：—

He taught Euclid (直接) *to* his sons. (間接)

(他教其子以歐克列幾何學)

摘出下文直接賓辭及間接賓辭：—

(1) *Bring* me that book. (2) I *forgave* him his faults.
 (3) We *allowed* him two rupees. (4) We *envy* him his good
 luck. (5) He *taught* me English. (6) He *refused* me the
 loan of a book. (7) I have *asked* you a question. (8) You
answered me nothing. (9) They *gave* the boy a prize. (10)
 They *sent* the boy a book. (11) They *lent* me ten rupees. (12)
 They *finned* him ten rupees. (13) He *owed* me twelve rupees.
 (14) The man *told* me the story. (15) He *showed* me the
 way. (16) He *left* them all his wealth. (17) They *played*
 him a trick. (18) He *promised* me his help. (19) He *saved*
 me much grief. (20) They *sold* him two horses. (21)
 He *did* me a great kindness. (22) He *made* me a handsome
 present. (23) This man *bears* me a grudge. (24) This affair
caused him much trouble, and *raised* him up enemies.

答案及譯解

<i>Indirect Objects.</i>	<i>Direct Objects.</i>
(1) me (拿其書來余)	book
(2) him (余宥其過失)	faults
(3) *him (或等允給彼二盧鄔)	rupees
(4) him (我等羨慕彼之幸運)	luck

* 此是支給傭人工金之用語。

- (5) me English
(彼教余以英語)
- (6) me book
(彼拒余書物之借用)
- (7) you question
(余曾問過一問于汝)
- (8) me nothing
(汝全不答應余)
- (9) the boy prize
(彼等賜一賞于其童子)
- (10) the boy book
(彼等送一書于彼童子)
- (11) me rupees
(彼等借余以十盧羅)
- (12) him rupees
(彼等科他十盧羅之罰金)
- (13) me rupees
(他負欠余十盧羅之債)
- (14) me story
(彼人說小說于余)
- (15) me him way
(他指示其道于余)
- (16) them wealth
(他遺彼等以其一切之財產)
- (17) him trick
(彼等以詭計弄他)
- (18) me help
(他允助余)
- (19) me grief
(他省余好多傷悲)

- (20) him horses
(彼等沽二匹馬于他)
- (21) me kindness
(彼曾施厚情于我)
- (22) me present
(他贈精緻之贈品于余)
- (23) me grudge
(此人抱妒忌于余)
- (24) him, him enemies
(此事件令彼大困難, 且作對敵于彼)

178. Factitive Verbs 變成動詞:—他動詞於既引一賓辭之外, 而更要多少語以造一完全之敘述辭者, 此動詞是謂之變成動詞 (§ 25). 其所加附以造成完全述辭之多少語者, 謂之 **Complement 完成辭**.

此完成辭之形有七種; 如左:—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Complement.</i>
<i>Noun</i> :—They	made	him	king
(他們立彼為王)			
<i>Adjective</i> :—The judge	set	the prisoner	free
(裁判官免放其罪人)			
<i>Participle</i> :—They	found	her	still weeping
(彼等見彼女尚泣着)			
<i>Preposition</i> :—This plot	filled	us all	with terror
<i>With Object</i>			
(此陰謀令我等大受恐怖)			
<i>Infinitive</i> :—I	like	a rascal	to be punished
(余願惡漢之被罰)			

Adverb:—They found the man asleep

Clause:—We have made him what he is

(我等已使他之所以爲他矣)

備考.—加完成辭於動詞以造完全敘述辭，是爲文法上所必要。如前文之“*I like a rascal to be punished*”一句，苟不用完成辭，而單言“*I like rascal,*”則其意義適相反。蓋依此文而解之，是已非願惡漢之被罰意味，而成爲願有惡漢之意味矣。

179. Omission of the Relative as Object 賓辭的複
 牒代名詞之省畧：——屬於此文有二種；(a) 其動詞爲他動
 詞，(b) 其動詞爲自動詞，且有前置以繼其後。然複牒代名
 詞之用於連續的意義時，則決不生省畧之作用（參照 § 163）

(a) The book I bought cost three rupees.

(此書余用三盧羅購來)

The house we occupied has fallen down.

(余所有之屋已倒蹋矣)

The man I engaged has now come.

(余所雇之人今已來)

He was not careful about the air he breathe

(他不謹慎於吸空氣)

(b) The house we lived in has fallen down.

(我等所住之屋已倒蹋矣)

The chairs we sat on are ten in number.

(余所坐之椅是在第十)

We have at last got the thing we fought for.

(我等最後爭得有物到手)

I have brought the book you spoke about.

(汝所講及之書余已携來)

試將上文各省畧之複牒代名詞而復填補之：一

答 案

- (a) The books *which* I bought cost three rupees.
 The house *which* we occupied has fallen down.
 The man *whom* I engaged has now come.
 He was not careful about the air *which* he breathed.
- (b) The house *which* we lived in has fallen down.
 The chairs *which* we sat are *on* ten in number.
 We have at last got the thing *which* we fought *for*.
 I have brought the book *which* you spoke *about*.

180. Transitive Verbs used Intransitively 他動詞用於自動詞：——他動詞變為自動詞有二法：一

(a) 其動詞用於一般之意義，且並不覺有多少之賓辭含於其文義中：一

Men *eat* to preserve life. (人食為所以養生)

A new-born child *sees*, but a kitten is born blind.

(新產小孩即能視，但貓兒生出是盲)

註。一此 *eat* 非食某物之食，為食一般之食，*sees* 非視某物之視，為視一般之視。故為自動詞。

(b) 反身代名詞省畧時：一

He *drew* (himself 畧) near me. (他移近於我)

Move (yourself 畧) forward. (向前進)

註。一此 *draw*, *move* 各指其後之與其主辭同一之人，雖應有反身代名詞，但 *drew him* (near) (移其身) *move yourself* (進其身) 者，仍是自移自進之意耳。故省畧其賓辭而為自動詞。

§ 3 章三. INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

131. Intransitive Verbs of Complete Predication

完全敘述之自動詞：——自動詞用時而自完全其意義，不一定要加附多少辭而後其意義始完全者，是謂之**完全敘述之自動詞**：—

Rivers *flow*. Winds *blow*. Horses *run*, or *walk*, or *graze*, or *lie down*. birds *fly*. All animals *sleep*. All animals *die*.

132. Intransitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication

不完全敘述之自動詞：——自動詞用時不能自完全其意義，而尚要多少完成辭以完成其敘述之餘義者，是謂之**不完全敘述之自動詞** (§ 27).

自動詞之完成辭，與變成動詞之完成辭，其形皆相同：—

	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Complement.</i>
<i>Noun</i>	A horse	is	a four-legged animal
	(馬爲四足之獸)		
	That beggar	turned	a thief
	(彼乞丐變爲盜賊)		
<i>Adjective</i> ...	The man	has fallen	sick
	(其人罹病)		
	The dog	went*	mad
	(犬變成癡狂) 註此 <i>went</i> 之用法是 <i>become</i> 之義		
<i>Participle</i> ...	The man	appears	pleased
	(其人似喜)		
	The stag	continued	running and jump
	(其鹿且走且躍)		

- Prep.with* { Your coat is of my colours.
(汝之外套備種種之色)
- Object.* { That book proved of no use.
(是書明是無用)
- Infinitive ...* { The flower seems to be fading.
(此花似凋殘)
- { You appear to have forgotten me.
(汝似忘我矣)
- Adverb.* The man has fallen asleep.
(其人已倒睡)
- Clause.* The results are what we expected.
(其結果已符吾等所逆料)

備考. 一完成辭而用在自動詞之後時，謂之的主觀完成辭 **Subjective Complement** (自己之意義)，蓋以其關係乎主辭也。若用在原動語氣 (Active Voice) 之變成動詞 (即不完全他動詞) 之後時，是謂之客觀的完成辭 **Objective Complement** (他人之意義)，蓋以其關係乎賓辭也。

註. 一例如 *A horse is an animal* 之 *an animal*，是在自動詞 *is* 之後；而關係於主辭之 *a horse*，故為主觀的完成辭。 *They made him king*，之 *king*，在於不完全他動詞 *made* 之後，而關係於賓辭之 *him*，故為客觀的完成辭。

備考 2. 一完成辭固常用於其動詞之後，但時有欲強其語勢者，則又反置於動詞之前：—

Strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it. —New Testament.

(導入於生活之門口狹小而路狹隘，故世人之發見之者誠鮮矣)

註. 一此文依順序排列之，應為 *the gate ; strait, the way is narrow, there be few.*，上文反是，故謂之置完成辭於動詞之前。

193. **The Cognate Object 同種賓辭**：——自動詞之後，雖不連續外界即異種之事物（與動詞意義上無何等關係之事物）以爲賓辭，但有時連續同類之動詞以爲賓辭，而其動詞即含有名詞之意義。

故吾人若云 “He has lived a sad *life*”（他生活於悲苦之生涯），此名詞之 “*life*” 意義，既含蓄於動詞 *lived* 之意義中，然實際上亦不外此自動詞 “*lived*” 之一部分也，然則此動詞之意義，與名詞之意義，皆屬相類矣。故此賓辭稱爲與動詞同種 *Cognate* 即同族 (*kindred*)。

同種賓詞之形有五種：一

(a) 直由動詞以成形之同種名詞。

They laughed a hearty *laugh*. (彼等笑—樂笑)

He died a sad *death*. (他死—慘死)

He lived a long *life*. (他生得長命)

He fought a good *fight*. (他戰—善戰)

He slept a sound *sleep*. (他睡—熟睡)

He prayed an earnest *prayer*. (他獻—誠心之禱祈)

He sighed a deep *sigh*. (他嘆—浩嘆)

She sang a fine *song*. (彼女唱—好歌)

(b) 同意義之同種名詞：一

He went a long *way*. (他走—長途)

He fought a good *battle*. (他戰—善戰)

He struck a deadly *blow*. (他擊—致命之擊)

He ran his own *course*. (他走自己之進路)

It blows a brisk *gale*. (風吹成烈風)

The bells ring a merry *peal*. (鈴搖一快響)

(c) 說明之名詞而代表省畧之同種名詞.

They shouted *applause* = they shouted a *shout* of applause.

(彼等大叫讚賞 = 彼等大叫讚賞之聲)

註. — 此 *applause* 是說明之名詞, 而省畧於其前之 *shout*, 即是與其動詞之 *shouted* 爲同種之名詞也. 餘可類推.

He served his *apprenticeship* = he served his *service* as an apprentice. (勤服其徒弟之職 = 他爲徒弟而勤服其職務)

He ran a great *risk* = he ran a *course* of great risk.

(彼冒大險 = 彼當大危險之衝)

He played the *fool* = he played the part of a fool.

(他作痴 = 他作痴人之動作)

(d) 形容省畧同種名詞之形容詞.

He shouted his loudest (略 shout).

(他發其最高之叫聲)

註. — 此省畧於形容詞 *loudest* 之後之 *shout*, 即是與其動詞同種之名詞也. 餘可類推.

He ran his fastest (run 或 pace). (他走其最速之步)

He fought his best (fight). (他戰其最竭力之戰)

She sang her sweetest (song). (彼女歌其最好音調之歌)

He breathed his last (breath). (他呼吸其最後之呼吸)

He tried his hardest (trial 或 attempt).

(他試其最難之試驗)

(e) 用 *it* 以表示同種名詞(即以 *it* 而代用同種名詞).

We must fight *it* (=the fight) out to the end.

(我等須戰此戰爭至於結局)

註. — 此 *it* 即代表動詞 *fight* 之同種名詞之 *the fight*, 即 *must fight the fight* 也. 餘可類推.

We have no horse; so we must foot *it* (即 go the distance on foot). (我等無馬; 故不能不徒步而行)

Lord Angelo dukes *it* (=act the part of a duke) well.

— *Shakespeare*. (安治路鄉所行不愧公爵矣)

184. The Reflexive or Personal Object 反身賓辭或人稱賓辭: — 古時之英語, 於自動詞之後, 屢用反身人稱代名詞或用於反身之之人稱代名詞.

此種動詞今尚存其少數: —

He *thre** home (急歸家). Fare *thee* well (送別). Haste *thee* away (速去). They sat *them* down (彼等坐下). He over-ate *himself* (彼食得太過). To over-sleep *oneself* (彼睡得太過). Vaulting ambition which o'erleaps *itself*.

— *Shakespeare*. (他懷越分之野心)

135. Intransitive Verbs in a causal Sense 使動意義之自動詞: — 自動詞若用於指使事物而行動之意義者, 其動詞則變為他動詞. 但屬於此種之動詞, 其例亦不多.

自動詞

The horse trotted out.

(馬跑出)

使動之動詞

They trotted out the horse

(=caused it to trot out).

(彼等令馬跑出)

* 此處之 *thee*, 是動詞 *he* 之賓辭; 蓋非如 *speak thou* 之命命法之 *thou*, 而為 *speak* 之主辭. 此可自其主位與賓位之形上區別之自明 (參照 § 144 表 II).

Water boils. (水沸)	He boils the water (=causes it to boil). (他令水沸)
The prisoners walk out. (囚人走出)	He walks out the prisoners (=causes them to walk out), (他令囚人走出)
A thorn ran into his hand. (棘刺入其手)	He ran a thorn (=caused it to run) into his hand. (他令荆棘刺其入手)
The kite flew into the air. (紙鳶飛入空中)	He flew the kite (=caused it to fly.) (他放紙鳶)
The soldiers march out. (士卒前進)	He marches out the soldiers. (他出兵)
Wheat grow in the field. (小麥生於野)	He grows wheat in the field. (他種小麥於田)
The boat floated. (艇浮起矣)	He floated the boat. (他放艇)
He talks hoarsely. (他講得喘急)	He talks himself hoarse; (=he makes himself hoarse by talking). (他講時令其自己喘急)

186. 自動詞亦有變其母音以成使動之意義者。但亦僅少數耳。

自動詞

他動詞或使動意義之動詞

The tree <i>falls</i> . (樹木傾倒)	He <i>fells</i> the tree with an axe. (他以一斧砍倒樹木)
The sun will <i>rise</i> at six. (日將昇於六時)	I cannot <i>raise</i> or <i>rose</i> this boy. (吾寔不能興起此童子)
The cow <i>lies</i> on the grass.	The man <i>lays</i> down his coat.

(牛母眠於草上)	(人放下其外套)
We must not <i>sit</i> here.	He <i>set</i> the books in order.
(我等切不可坐此)	(他依次序放置各書)
He <i>dives</i> into the water.	He <i>dips</i> the sponge into the
(他沉入水中)	water. (他浸海絨於水中)
The enemy <i>quails</i> .	He <i>quells</i> the enemy.
(敵人喪胆)	(他已平定敵人)
Water <i>drips</i> from the jug.	He <i>drops</i> water from jug.
(水由壺中滴出)	(他由壺中滴水)

同前文之法；如“*drench*”（飲）之自動詞，亦可以用爲他動詞 *cause to drink* 之意。*soak*（吸）可以用爲 *cause to suck* 之意。

187. *Prepositional Verbs* 前置的詞動詞：——自動有可以加之前置詞而成他動詞者，此動詞若用於被動語氣時，即可作真正之他動詞視之。

We *act on* this rule. (自動語氣)

(我等實行此規則)

This rule is *acted on* by us. (被動語氣)

(此規則爲我等所實行)

備考 1.—此 *act on* 之動詞，用於自動語氣時，其“*on*”是不能作前置詞解剖之。何以故 蓋對於彼無賓辭也。故只可作動詞之自己一部分者解剖之自合

備考 2.—前置詞的動詞 (*Prepositional Verbs*) 之前置詞，每用在動詞之後，惟“*with*”及“*over*”則每置於動詞之前：—

He *withstood* the attack. (他抗拒攻擊)

註.—*Withstood* 者，*stood against* 或 *endured* 之義。

He was *overcome* by the enemy. (他被敵打敗)

註.—*Overcome* 者，*defeated* 之義。

The banks were *overflowed* with water.

(兩岸被水氾濫)

註.—*Overflowed* 者, inundated 之義.

The field is *overgrown* with weeds.

(田被雜草所覆)

註.—*Overgrown* 者, covered 之意.

The boundary has been *overstepped*.

(越過境界)

註.—*Overstepped* 者, transgressed 之意.

凡此動詞若與前置詞分離而用時, 則 “stand” “come” “flow” “grow” “step” 等字, 固純然自動詞也. 然其所以成此他動詞者, 寔籍前置詞之力耳.

183. Summary 摘要:——統觀以上所論, 於是知自動詞而變爲他動詞厥有二法:—

(1) 自動詞而用于使動之意義時 (參照 § 185).

(2) 自動詞而與前置詞聯合用於自動語氣時 (參照 § 187).

又自動詞可以引他辭爲其賓辭, 而仍不變其自動之本性者, 厥有二種:—

(1) 同種賓辭 (參照 § 183).

(2) 反身賓辭 (參照 § 184).

§ 4 章四. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.

原動語氣及被動語氣

189. 他動詞有兩種語氣, 一原動語氣 **Active**, 二被動語氣 **Passive**.

190. *Active Voice*, 原動語氣者, 立於主位之人物, 能自動作以施及于他物之動詞也。

R'am *kill* a snake. (蘭模殺一蛇)

此“R'am”是立於主位以殺及于他物之蛇, 是“殺”爲“R'am”所作之事, 故“kill”是爲原動語氣。

Passive Voice.——被動語氣者, 立於其位之人物, 受事於他物也:—

A snake *is killed* by R'am.

此主辭之“snake”是被“R'am”所殺也, 是“殺”爲“蛇”所受之事, 故“is killed”爲被動語氣。

191. 自動詞不能用於被動語氣, 但在於原動語氣而有同種賓辭時, 亦得用之:—

I have fought the good fight (*active*).

(余戰一快戰)

The good fight has been fought by me. (*Passive*).

(其痛快之戰已爲余所戰矣)

上文之“have fought”是原動語氣, 而“has been fought”爲被動語氣。

192. 凡一文是由原動體改爲被動體時, 則原動語氣動詞之賓辭, 而變爲被動語氣動詞之主辭。

Object to Active Verb.

Subject to Passive Verb.

Brutes cannot make tools. Tools cannot be made by

(畜類不能造器具)

brutes. (器具不能由畜類造之)

Brutes do not possess hands. Hands are not possessed by

(畜類無手)

brutes. (手非畜類所有物)

193. **Retained Object** 留存賓辭:— 凡原動語氣之動

詞而引兩賓辭繼其後者 (參照 § 177), 於被動語氣中猶可留存其一. 此賓辭(被留存者)不論是屬於原動語氣之直接與間接者皆可:—

(a) 原動語氣之間接賓辭 (Indirect Object) 而被留存者; 如:—

原動語氣動詞	被動語氣動詞
I forgave <i>him</i> his fault. (余恕其過)	The fault was forgiven <i>him</i> by me. (其過是由余恕他)
We allowed <i>him</i> two rupees. (我等給他兩盧鄙)	Two rupees were allowed <i>him</i> by us. (兩盧鄙是由我等給他)

(b) 原動語氣動詞之直接賓辭 (Direct Object) 而被留存者; 如:—

原動語氣動詞	被動語氣動詞
I forgave him his <i>fault</i> .	He was forgiven <i>his fault</i> by me.
We allowed him <i>two rupees</i> .	He was allowed <i>two rupees</i> by us.

備考. 一如以前所述, 添用於動詞之賓辭凡有五種, 詳述之如左:—

- (1) 直接賓辭 (添用於他動詞):—He taught *Euclid* (§ 172).
- (1) 間接賓辭 (添用於他動詞):—He taught *his sons* *Euclid* (§ 177).
- (3) 留存賓辭 (添用於被動詞):—His sons were taught *Euclid* (§ 193).
- (4) 同種賓辭 (添用於自動詞):—The fever must run *its course* (§ 183). (熱氣一定走進其進路)

(5) **反身賓辭** (添用於自動詞):—He sat *himself* down
(§ 184). (他自己坐下)

194. 變成動詞由原動語氣變為被動語氣時，則客觀的完成辭，成為主觀的完成辭。

原動語氣：賓辭之完成辭 被動語氣：主辭之完成辭

They proclaimed him *king*. He was proclaimed *king* by
(彼等宣告其為王) them. (他被彼等宣告為王)

They did not crown him *king*. He was not crowned *king* by
(他們不登彼於王位) them. (他不被彼等登於王位)

195. **Verbs Active in form, but Passive in Sense**
形為原動而意義為被動之動詞：——他動詞有時仍為原動之形，而用於被動之意義者：—

(a) 有完成辭之動詞：—

The stone *feels* rough (is rough when it is felt).
(此石覺得粗) (觸之而覺其粗之意)

Honey *tastes* sweet (is sweet when it is tasted).
(蜂蜜味之覺得甘) (味之而知其甘之意)

The milk *smells* sour (is sour when it is smelt).
(此乳有酸味) (嗅之而知其酸之意)

Your blame *counts* for nothing (is worth nothing when it
(汝之非難不足取) is counted.
(辯論之而知其無價值之意)

Your composition *reads* well (sounds well when it is
(汝之文可讀) read). (朗誦之而知好音調之意)

The house *dose* not *let* (is not taken when it is meant
(此屋不租) to be let.) (欲租之則不能之意)

The horse *dose* not *sell* (is not taken when it is meant
 (此屋不買) to be sold). (欲買之則不賣之意)

The cloth will *wear* thin (will become thin when it is
 (此布漸薄) worn). (着之則漸變成薄之意)

(b) 無完成辭之動詞：一

The house is *building* (=is in a state of being built).
 (此屋是建築) (建築中)

The trumpets *are sounding* (=are being sounded.)
 (吹喇叭) (奏吹中)

The cannons *are firing* (=are being fired).
 (燒大砲) (燒放中)

The drums *are beating* (=are being beaten).
 (擊鼓) (鼓奏中)

The house *is finishing* (=is being finished).
 (此屋是落成) (完成中)

The book *is printing* (=is being printed).
 (此書是刊行) (印刷中)

The cows *are milking* (=are being milked).
 (擠牛乳) (擠取中)

備考。一原動語氣形之名動詞亦可用此法而用於被動之意義：一

This house was three years in *building* (=being built).
 (此屋建築三年) (建築中)

§ 5 章五.—MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, AND PERSON.

法, 時, 數, 及 人 稱

196. Mood defined 法之定義：——法也者，示動詞記述之法則也。

197. **Names of the Mood 法之名稱**：——法有四種，三種定法，一種無定法。

(a) Three Finite Moods (三種定法)：—

1. Indicative 直說法.
2. Imperative 命令法.
3. Subjunctive 前提法.

(b) The Infinitive Mood 無定法.

198. **Characters of the Moods 法之性質**：——直說法者，吾人確言或指定有事實之動作也；如：“he comes,” “he came,” “he will come.”

命令法者，吾人命令或勸告一動作也；如：“come thou,” “come you,” 或 “come.”

前提法者，吾人假定一動作也；如：“if he come or should come.”

無定法者，通常置一 “to” 字於動詞之前以成形；如 “to come.”

199. **Number and Person 數及人稱**：——凡有定動詞之數及人稱，須依定其主辭之性質而用。

- | | | |
|------|---|---|
| 數... | { | 若主辭是單數，則動詞亦須用單數；如：“Rain is falling.” |
| | | 若主辭是複數，則動詞亦須用複數；如：“Rain-drops are falling.” |
| 人稱 | { | 若主辭是第一人稱，則動詞亦須用第一人稱；如：“I love, we come.” |
| | | 若主辭是第二人稱，則動詞亦須用第二人稱；如：“Thou lovest, you come.” |
| | | 若主辭是第三人稱，則動詞亦須用第三人稱；如：“He loves,” “The teacher has come.” |

職是之故，於是定出左之規則：——有定動詞者，必與其主辭同一之數及人稱也。

備考。一凡名詞及同等名詞皆要第三人稱之動詞。又除第一人稱及第二人稱之代名詞外，其一切代名詞亦要第三人稱動詞

試指出下文各動詞之數及人稱：——

The cow *is* a quite and useful animal. Oxen *draw* the plough. I *see* four men coming. They *see* the sun rising. We *see* the hills in the distance. Thou *art* the wisest in the room. The horse *carries* its rider. Four men *carry* the palanquin. That the horse is lame *is seen* by all of us. How *do* this *was* not understood.

答 案 及 譯 解

1. *is* 第三人稱，單數。（牝牛是一靜而有用之動物）
2. *draw* 第三人稱，複數。（牡牛曳犁）
3. *see* 第一人稱，單數。（余見四人進來中）
4. *see* 第三人稱，複數。（彼等見太陽之昇）
5. *see* 第一人稱，複數。（我等見小丘在於遠方）
6. *art* 第二人稱，單數。（彼是此室中之最賢者）
7. *carries* 第三人稱，單數。（馬載已之騎者）
8. *carry* 第三人稱，複數。（四人擡轎）
9. *is seen* 第三人稱，單數。（彼馬之跛凡我等皆見之）
10. *was understood* 第三人稱，單數。（如何爲此是不能知）

200. Tense defined 時之定義：——時也者，示動作之時也，動詞所生之時如左：一

- (1) 動作行於現在時者；如，“He sees a star”（他見一星）是也。

(2) 動作行於過去時者；如，“He saws a star”是也。

(2) 動作行於未來時者；如，“He will see a star”是也。

是故，動詞有三種之主要時；即：—

Present 現在時. Past 過去時. Future 未來時.

201. 此三大別之時，各備有四種之形：—

I. Indefinite 無定形；即示現在，過去，未來之事之最簡單形；如，“I love,” “I loved,” “I shall love.”

II. Continuous 連續形；即示現在，過去，未來之事尙未完也；如，“I am loving,” “I was loving,” “I shall be loving.”

備考。— 此連續之時，有時亦名爲不完全形 Imperfect，蓋以其所表之事爲未完結也。

III. Perfect 完全形；其所表現在，過去，未來之事有十分完全之狀態也，如，“I have loved,” “I had loved,” “I shall have loved.”

IV. Perfect Continuous 完全連續，即合併 (II) 與 (III) 之兩意義而成者也；如，“I have been loving,” “I had been loving,” “I shall have been loving.”

§ 6 章六.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

直 說 法

Forms of the Tenses, Indicative Mood.

直 說 法 各 時 之 形

202. 直說法之動詞，有三種之時與十二種之形，茲示之，如次：—

I. *Active Voice.*

<i>Form.</i>	<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Future Tense.</i>
1. <i>Indefinite</i>	I love	I loved	I shall love
2. <i>Continuous</i>	I am loving	I was loving	I shall be loving
3. <i>Perfect</i>	I have loved	I had loved	I shall have loved
4. <i>Perfect Continu-</i>			[loving.
<i>ous</i>	I have been loving	I had been loving	I shall have been

II.—*Passive Voice.*

<i>Form.</i>	<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Future Tense.</i>
1. <i>Indefinite</i>	I am loved	I was loved	I shall be loved
2. <i>Continuous</i>	I am being loved	I was being loved	(無)
3. <i>Perfect</i>	I have been loved	I had been loved	I shall have been
4. <i>Perfect Continu-</i>			loved.
<i>ous</i>	(無)	(無)	(無)

203. 無定形之現在，過去，未來時，凡其數及人稱之語尾變化之法示如左：—

I.—*Active Voice.*

Present Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I love	We love
2nd „	Thou lovest	Ye or you love
3rd „	He loves or loveth	They love

Past Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I loved	We loved
2nd „	Thou lovedst	Ye or you loved
3rd „	He loved	They loved

Future Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I shall love	We shall love
2nd "	Thou wilt love	Ye or you wilt love
3rd "	He will love	They will love

備考.—(1) 第二人稱之單數形 (thou lovest, thou lovedst, thou wilt love), 現今除韻文之外, 蓋罕見其用, 而代之以複數之形 (you love, you loved, you will love) 蓋此複數之形, 其實際雖為複數, 但移其用於單數之意義時, 其穩妥亦一如單數然; 如, “Have you come, my son?” (吾兒汝來乎), 此 “have you” 是對於 “son” 而言, 亦是用於單數之意義也, 故即作單數解剖之亦無不可。

備考.—(2) “he loveth” 之形, 於今除韻文之外亦罕見其用。

II.—*Passive Voice.**Present Tense.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I am loved	We are loved
2nd "	Thou art loved	Ye or you are loved
3rd "	He is loved	They are loved

Past Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I was loved	We were loved
2nd "	Thou wast loved	Ye or you were loved
3rd "	He was loved	They were loved

Future Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I shall be loved	We shall be loved
2nd "	Thou wilt be loved	Ye or you will be loved
3rd "	He will be loved	They will be loved

204. Do and Did:—原動語氣之現在無定時, 又可以用“do”以造其形, 而過去時亦可以用“did.”

Present Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>1st. Person.....</i>	I do love	We do love
<i>2nd "</i>	Thou dost love	Ye or you do love
<i>3rd "</i>	He dose love	They do love

Past Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>1st. Person.....</i>	I did love	We did love
<i>2nd "</i>	Thou didst love	Ye or you did love
<i>3rd "</i>	He did love	They did love

用“did”及“do”以造時之形, 蓋有三種之目的:—

(a) 爲強其語勢; 如, “I *do* love,”* “I *did* love.”

(b) 爲插入否定辭之“not”故; 如, “I *do not* love” (此是更善於言 “I love not),” “I *did not* love” (此亦是更善於言 “I loved not.”)

(c) 爲發疑問; 如, “*Dose* he love?” “Why *did* he love?” “Did he not love?”

205. Do 與 did 用於發問文体時, 則動詞之主辭之名詞或代名詞, 是常置於 do 或 did 之後, 而不是置於其前; 如:—

Do I love? Did he not love? (疑問)

* I *do* love 是實愛之意, 比於 I love 之意更強, 故謂之強語勢。

但 do 與 did 用爲強語氣或與 not 同用時，則主辭之名詞或代名詞，是置之於動詞之前，而不是置在後；如：—

I do not love. (否定文) I do love. (強語氣)

試改正下文之謬誤：—

(1) Loved he not? (2) Came he? (3) He not saw this book. (4) He reads not his book with care. (5) They not slept long last night. (6) They broke not the slate, but he broke it. (7) You not read your book well. (8) This letter came from me to-day or yesterday? (9) It came not to-day, but yesterday. (10) You not yet finished reading the letter.

答 案 及 譯 解

- (1) *Did he not love?*
(他不曾愛過乎)
- (2) *Did he come?*
(彼已來乎)
- (3) He *did* not see this book.
(他不曾見此書)
- (4) He *does* not read his book.
(他不曾讀其書)
- (5) They *did* not sleep long last night.
(他昨夜不曾久睡)
- (6) They *did* not break the slate, but he broke it.
(彼等不曾壞此石版他破之耳)
- (7) You *do* not read your book well.
(汝不善讀汝之書)
- (8) *Did* this letter come for me to-day or yesterday.
(此信是今日寄來余抑昨日乎)

(9) *It did not come to-day, but yesterday.*

(彼非今日到來，昨日耳)

(10) *Did you not yet finish reading the letter.*

(汝未曾讀完該信乎)

206. Has come, is come. — 此兩形之意義固不同，而其時亦迥異。

(a) 在於 “*I have come*” 之形之所注重者，為動作之時，問來之動作以何時為完乎，則曰現在也。而此 “*have come*” 正為以現在時完全形而示現在之時；故此 “*come*” 是屬於時之一部分。

(b) 在於 “*I am come*” 之形之所注重者，為動作者之狀態，而非動作之時，問動作者有如何之狀態乎，則曰來之狀態也。故 “*I am come*” 之 “*come*” 字非時之一部分，乃為過去分詞而用於動詞 “*am*” 之主觀的完成辭耳。茲更於下文舉別例以說明之：—

“*The flower is faded.*” 此文是言花之凋謝狀態，而於其凋謝之時，則未嘗言及。

“*The flowers has faded.*” 此文是言花之現在十分凋謝之時，與前文大異。^{*} 細味此文，則其兩形之差異，當自明矣。

207. Shall and Will. — 此等助動詞是用為造原動及被動兩語氣之未來時之形者，固為學者所已學于前矣。

但欲曉然於此兩字為何時應用 “*shall*” 及何時應用 *will* 之理，此亦屬於英語難解中之一。故苟欲明之，則不可不知其用於未來時之三種意義。茲揭其三種意義如左：—

^{*} 故世之謂 “*has come*” 與 “*is come*” 為同等辭，又用 “*is*” 以代 “*has*,” *was* 以代 *had*, 為限制動詞之行動者皆誤也。

- (a) 單表未來時；此外則別無所言。
 (b) 表未來之際，同時含有命令之意。
 (c) 表未來之際，同時含有意志之意，

(a) *Merely future time* 單表未來時

單表未來時，此外絕不含有他種之意義（即不混雜有命令或意志之意），此之謂純粹未來時也；故 *shall* 須用於第一人稱，而 *will* 可用於第二及第三人稱；如：—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I shall go	We shall go
2nd " 	Thou wilt go	You will go
3rd " 	He will go	They will go

(b) *An Implied Command, Promise, or Threat.*

含蓄命令，期許，或強迫之意

吾之意不僅欲言未來時，而尚於此外更加以命令，期許，或強迫之意者，則 *shall* 可以用於第二及第三人稱以代 *will*；如：—

You *shall* be hanged. (依於某人之命令)

(汝必受絞刑)

You *shall* receive your prize to-morrow. (期許)

(汝明天必受汝之賞)

If you do this, you *shall* be hanged. (強迫)

(若汝爲此，汝必受絞刑)

(c) *An Implied Intention* 含蓄意志之意

吾苟欲表示自己之志向，則可用 *will* 於第一人稱以代 *shall*；如：—

I *will* call on you to-day, and *shall* then say good-bye.

(余將訪汝於今日,而後余乃告辭)

上文之 *will*, 是表訪問之意志, 而 *shall* 是表未來時。

What is denoted by the Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

直說法諸時之所表示者

208. The Present Indefinite 現在無定形：——此時之特別用法, 爲表示過去, 現在, 未來, 三時之真實事情：一

The sun *shines* by day, and the moon by night.

(日照於晝, 而月照於夜)

Things equal to the same thing *are* equal to one another.

(凡物對於同一之物固平等, 對於他物亦平等也)

Sixteen annas* *make* one rupee.

(十六安拿爲一盧鄙)

Europe *is* the smallest of the continent.

(歐羅巴洲者, 大陸中之最小者也)

Death *is* the common lot of all men.

(死爲人生普通之命運)

此現在時無定形之表示者, 全爲宇宙間之真理。故可名之爲科學時 The Tense of Science.

209. 現在時無定形, 又可以表人生永久之生活, 或習慣之性質諸事：一

He *is* a fine singer. (他是美聲之歌者)

He *works* hard. (他勞動辛苦)

He *loves* amusement more than work.

(他愛晏樂, 勝於勞動)

* one anna 約值我國銅貨四十錢之閱。

He *keeps* his promise. (他依口齒)

He *has* good health. (他甚康健)

210. 現在時無定形，又可以述及現在之事。但必其文体關於左舉之兩例乃可；(a) 由特別之副詞或句語所表示之時。(b) 或前後文勢含有現在時之時：一

- (a) {
- I *am now* in a hurry to start.
(余今急於出發) 註：一有 *now* 之副詞。
 - I *cannot start at present*.
(余現不能動身) 註：一有 *at present* 之句語。
 - The wind *is* very cold *to-day*.
(今日之風甚寒) 註：一有 *to-day* 之副詞。
- (b) {
- I *understand* what you *say*.
(余明白汝所言) 註：一「言」為現在行出之事，故知 *say* 顯是現在。
 - I see no use in doing what you *advice*.
(余不見得行汝之勤告有何用處) 註：一「勤告」為現在行出之事，故知 *advice* 為現在。
 - The door *is* open, I did not shut it.
(門是打開，余不曾關之也) 註：一一方面既謂「不關」之過去事，則知現在必開矣，故知 *is open* 為現在。

211. 現在時無定形，又可以述及未來之事。然亦必其未來時關於左舉之兩例乃可；(a) 由特別之副詞或句語所表示之時。(b) 前後文勢含有未來時之時。

- (a) He *comes* (=will come) here *in a few days' time*.
(彼於數日以內或來此) 註：一有 *in a few days' time* 一句而示未來，則顯為未來之事可知。故 *comes* 即為 *will come* 之意。
- (b) When *do you start* (=will you start) for calcutta.

(君將於何時出發往加爾各搭) 註：一問人之「出發」期者，則顯爲未來事也。故 *do you start* 即 *will you start* 之意。

212. 說者如欲於言時增活潑其議論，使似述過去之事，如活現於眼前者，則此現在時無定形，可以述過去之事。

Baber *now leads* (=then led) his men through the Khyher Pass, and *enters* (=entered) the plains of India.

(伯褒[印度帖莫臥兒帝國之太祖]今已引其軍通過關比亞山峽之險，而入印度之平原)

註：一此 *now leads* 可云 *then led* (於是引領)，*enters* 可云 *entered* (既入) 皆如描寫其過去事活現於眼前也。

此現在時無定形，可以名爲歷史的現在時 (historic present) 蓋其記述歷史上過去之事，恰如現在也。

213. **The Past Indefinite 過去時無定形**：——此時之特別法用，惟陳述當時已經過去之真實事情，而絕不述及現在時。

Baber found the Mogul Empire in India.

(伯褒建設莫臥兒帝國於印度)

Vasco de Gama *was* the first man from Europe, who *rounded* the Cape of Good Hope.

(喝馬(葡之航海者)爲廻航好望角最初之歐人也)

故現在時無定形，可以名爲科學時 (Tense of Science)，而此過去時無定形，可以名爲歷史時 (Tense of History)。

214. **The Present Perfect* 現在時完全形**：——此時之特別意義者，不易結合有彼此一種意義之完全事件，而現在於現在時者。

* 一種之意義者，無論何種之意義，但必結合有一種之意。

I have lived twenty years in Lucknow.

(余住於留克讓已二十年。——即二十年前余就起首住於此，今尚仍然居住之意)

The lamp has gone out.

(燈已滅息——即燈光適滅，今則在暗黑中之意)

215. 現在時完全形，除由過去事所生之事物情形而現在尚存之外，蓋絕不用為陳述過去之事。

The British Empire has succeeded to the Mogul.

(不列顛帝國已繼承莫臥兒帝國)

夫不列顛廢莫臥兒帝國之事，已於一世紀以前成之矣，故此事久已成為過去之事。然此文記之以“has succeeded”之現在時完全形而不為誤者，此又何故，蓋由過去事所生之事物情形，於今尚存(所謂承繼其帝國)；即不列顛今日尚存，其現在所領之區域，無異於疇昔也。

但用法如下文者則誠誤：—

Baber has found the Mogul Empire.

上文所以為誤者，蓋由伯賽豆所創建帝國之事物情形，已全屬過去也。

216. 現在時完全形為表現在時，故無論如何示過去意義之副詞，或句語，不能形容之。蓋示過去之意義，與示現在之意義者相合，則意義適自相矛盾矣。

誤 用 更 正

The rain has ceased yesterday. *The rain ceased yesterday.*

(昨日已晴了雨)

I have finished my letter last evening. *I finished my letter last evening.* (吾之信已於昨以寫起)

The parrot has died of cold last night. *The parrot died of cold last night.* (鸚鵡已於昨夜冷死)

雖然，如下兩文者，亦不爲誤。蓋以其用於文中之副詞或句語，成一過去時與現在時相連續之一種，是以不覺其矛盾也。

The English Empire *has been flourishing* for the past 150 years. (不列顛帝國，前百五十年間已繁盛。——即不列顛帝國，於百五十年以前已繁盛，於今尙依然繁盛之意)

Fever *has raged* in the town since Monday last. (熱症自前禮拜一以來在此市猖獗。——即於前禮拜一便起首猖獗，於今尙依然猖獗之意)

217. The Past Perfect 過去時完全形一名 Pluperfect 重過去。——凡欲言一事已成，而彼事乃開始時，則可用此時。

動詞表示前之動作者，則用過去時完全形，即重過去時，動詞表示後之動作者，則可用過去時無定形。

(a)	前之動作	後之動作
	過去時完全形	過去時無定形

He *had been* ill two days, when the doctor *was sent* for.
(他病了兩日然後請醫生)

He *had seen* many foreign cities, before he *returned* home.
(他遍覽過好多外國都會然後歸國)

(b)	後之動作	前之動作
	過去時無定形	過去時完全形

The boat *was sunk* by a which *had* suddenly sprung up.
hurricane. (颶風忽起後，船即被其打沈)

The sheep *fled* in great haste, for a wolf *had entered* the
(狼闖入羊欄，故羊大驚走) fold.

此過去完全時，除表示由前一件過去之事以先立於他事外，應皆不可用。

然世之學者及書記，往往於應用過去無定時之時，而誤用過去完全時，茲一舉公文以指其誤。

I beg to inform you that the trustees to the.....endowment, at the meeting convened on 19th July 1891, *had* un-animously resolved to reserve the option of appointing or dismissing the men employed. (敬啓者，對於一給與金被托人之事，於一千八百九十二年七月十九日召集議會時，已通場一致，決議依舊而保存備員任免之權矣。此白)

此文所言之事即決議之事，未嘗有由前之過去事，以先立於他事之意，故只可用過去無定時自合，但其用過去完全時，此其所以爲誤也。

218. The Future Perfect 未來完全時。——此種時有二種意義之用法；(a) 表未來之完成事件，(b) 表過去事件之完成。

(a) He *will have* reached home before the rain sets in.

(彼將于雨降之前即已抵家，即……抵家之事，將於雨降之前可完成之)

(b) You *will have* heard (前時一定聞過之意) this news already; so I need not repeat it. (此新聞汝已經聞過，故無庸余之再贅)

* 以未來時而表過去時，驟觀之似未免矛盾。但此之所謂未來者，其含推度事件而信其已過之意，畧有過乎未來時之本意。如 “you will have heard” 同於 I infer or believe that you have heard (余信得或推度汝已聞其事) 之意也。

§ 7 章七.—IMPERATIVE MOOD.

命 令 法

219. 命令法, 是僅用於現在時及第二人稱而已.

Singular.

Plural.

Speak, or speak thou.

Speak, or speak you, or speak

(汝語)

ye. (汝等語)

220. 此法表示第一人稱及第三人稱時, 可用動詞之 let, 此 let 非他形, 蓋即動詞之命令法, 第二人 (單數或複數) 稱之 “to let” 也; 如:—

Singular.

Plural.

1st. Person.....Let me speak.

Let us speak.

(待余語罷)

(待我等語罷)

3rd „Let him speak.

Let them speak.

(待他語罷)

(待彼等語罷)

備考, 一上文之 “speak,” 是用於無定法, 其前應有 “to” 字, 但省畧之耳. 然往昔及今日之英韻文, 其命令法表示第一人及第三人稱時, 並此 let 亦不必假用矣. 惟在散文則否; 如:—

Every solder *kill* (命令而殺之意) his prisoners.—*Shakespeare*.

(各兵士可殺自己之捕虜)

Thither our path lies; *wind* we (令我等迂曲前進之意) up the

height.—*R. Browning*. (彼處有吾人之道在, 使我等迂曲以登其

極)

命令法之第三人稱, 有一普通句之 *suffice it*, 於今尚存, 其意爲 “let it suffice.” (使滿足)

Suffice it to say that all prisoner were quitted.

(凡此捕虜而盡釋之, 是謂滿足矣)

221. 命令法之重要用法，爲表示 (a) 命令，(b) 訓誨，或 (c) 願望之意：—

(a) *Command* (命令)：—

Speak,—or I fire. (言矣，不然我放槍)

Awake, arise, or be for ever fallen.—*Milton.*

(醒矣，興矣，否則永爲墮落)

(b) *Precept or Invitation* (訓誨或勸諭)：—

Go to the ant, thou sluggard; *consider* her ways and *be* wise.—*Old Testament.* (行至蟻處，汝怠惰者，細考其所爲能得智慧)

(c) *Entreaty or Prayer* (願望或祈禱)：—

Give us this day our daily bread, and *forgive* us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us.—*Lords Prayer.* (願今日賜我等日日之食，且宥我等之罪，如我等之宥他人犯我之罪者)

222. 動詞用於否定即禁止之意義時，其成命令法之形，今例俱用動詞之“do.”

古 形

Fear not.

Taste not that food.

今 形

Do not fear.

Do not taste that food.

(莫懼)

(莫嘗彼食品)

有時動詞用於肯定之意義時，其命令法亦可以用“do”以成形，因是而益強其希望之語氣。但此是僅限用於俗語體耳。

Do leave off making that noise.

(請停止其音響)

Do help me to lift this box.

(助余提起此箱)

223. 命令法有時用爲表示 懸象 *Supposition* 之意：一

Take care of the pence,* and the pounds will take care of themselves.=If you take care of the pence the pounds will etc.

(謹慎小財之處置, 自有大財之聚積矣)

Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

(爾若抵抗惡魔, 則彼自然遠避汝)

224. 命令法有時用於絕對 *Absolutely* 之意, 雖然, 但甚稀耳; (參照 § 28c).

A large number of men, *say* a hundred, are working on the railroad. (一大隊人, 凡一百位在, 鐵道上作業)

Behold, this dreamer cometh.—*Old Testament*.

(願牙, 此夢人來矣)

§ 8 — THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

前 提 法

225. 前提法何以名, 以其用時常結合他文而後完其意義, 蓋絕少孤立也者。

226. 前提法之現在, 過去及未來時 (無定), 其原動語氣之語尾變化如左:—

* pence 即 penny 之複數, 英國銅貨, 十二 pence 爲一 shilling (銀貨), 二十 shilling 爲一 pound (金貨), 此全文之意, 無他, 不過積少自成多之意耳。

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	If I love.	If we love.
2nd " 	If thou love (非 lovest)	If you love.
3rd " 	If he love (非 loveth)	If they love.

Past Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	If I loved.	If we loved.
2nd " 	If thou lovedst.	If you loved.
3rd " 	If he loved.	If they loved.

Future Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	I should love.	If we should love.
2nd " 	If thou shouldst love.	If ye or you should love.
3rd " 	If he should love.	If they should love.

然 *thou love, he love, 及 thou loved* 之形, 漸漸趨於不用, 今日大都用直說法之形之 “if thou lovest” 以代 “if thou love;” “if he loves” 以代 “if he love;” “if thou lovedst” 以代 “if thou loved.”

註. 一前提法亦有於第三人稱之單數現在而不附 *s*, 於第二人稱之單數, 現在, 過去, 未來, 而不附 *st* 之法者. 但現今已漸次附之, 而與直說法無甚區別. 如上表所舉之有附或不附之混雜者, 蓋示現今所通行之實際也.

227. 動詞之 “to be,” 其構成前提法之形, 比於別種詞更爲完全:—

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	If I be.	If we be.
2nd " 	If thou be.	If ye or you be.
3rd " 	If he be.	If they be.

Past Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	If I were.	If we were.
2nd „	If thou wert.	If ye or you were.
3rd „	If he were.	If they were.

Future Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st. Person.....	If I should be.	If we should be.
2nd „	If thou shouldst be.	If ye or you should be.
3rd „	If he should be.	If they should be.

228. 前提法之過去及未來時之形，今尚屬於通用。至其現在時之形，斯不通用矣。但往往以直說法之現在時之形以代之。

229. 原動語氣之連續形及完全形，示如左：—

	<i>Continuous.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
<i>Present</i>	If I be loving.	If I have loved.
<i>Past</i>	If I were loving.	If I had loved.
<i>Future</i>	If I should be loving.	If I should have loved.

230. 被動語氣而用於普通之前提法之時者，僅有無定形及完全形之二形：—

	<i>Indefinite.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
<i>Present</i>	If I be loved.	If I have been loved.
<i>Past</i>	If I were loved.	If I had been loved.
<i>Future</i>	If I should be loved.	If I should have been loved.

THE USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

前提法之用法.

231. 直說法言事實 *fact*; 命令法言命令 (*order*); 至前提法則言目的 (*purpose*), 願望 (*wish*), 假定 (*condition*), 或懷疑 (*doubt*), 者也.

(1) *A Purpose* 目的

於此用法, 前提法之動詞, 則必爲接續詞之 *that* 或 *lest* (*lest*=*that not* 同)所先立. 其助動詞之“*may*”及“*might*”用在“*that*”之後, 而“*should*”用在“*lest*”之後.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive; Purpose.</i>
<i>Present</i>	{	I give you a prize,...that you <i>may work</i> well again. (余賞一賞汝, 但汝應好好再做)
or		I shall keep your book,... <i>lest you should lose</i> it. (余將保存汝之書, 如此汝可 以不失之也)
<i>Future.</i>	{	that you <i>may not lose</i> it.
<i>Past....</i>	{	I gave you a prize,.....that you <i>might work</i> well again.
		I kept your book,..... <i>lest you should lose</i> it. that you <i>might not lose</i> it.

(2) *A Wish or Order* 願望或命令

They kingdom *come*=*may* thy kingdom *come*, 同於 I wish (汝之天國來矣) that thy kingdom *may come*.

I wish that he *were* as clever as his sister.

(余願他之聰明似其姊)

God *save* the queen. Long *live* the king.

(神祐皇后)

(視王萬歲)

Far *be it* from me to say anything false.

(毋令余亦言虛僞之事)

My sentence is that the prisoner *be* hanged.

(余之宣告, 是處罪人以絞刑)

(3) *Condition and its Consequence.*

假定及其斷案

動詞表假定時, 通常皆用接續詞之“*if*”以置於前. 若表斷案時, 則用助動之“*would*”以表示之.

First Sentence; Condition. Second Sentence; Consequence.

Present } If he *should meet* me, he *would know* me at once.

(若他遇余, 他就認識余)

or

Future. } If I *were* in his place, I *would pay* the rupee.

(若余當其位, 余就給其盧鄙)

Past.... { If he *had met* me, he *would have known* me.

{ If I *had been* in his place, I *would have paid* the rupee.

有時省畧“*if*”而不言. 但在此用法, 其 *should* 或 *had* 或 *were* 等字, 須置之於其主辭之前:—

Present } *Should* he *meet* me, he *would know* me at once.

or

Future. } *Were* I in his place, I *would pay* the rupee.

Past... { *Had* he *met* me, he *would have known* me.

{ *Had* I *been* in his place, I *would have paid* the rupee.

亦有省去假定文而僅言斷案文者:—

He *would* never agree to that (“*if you asked him*” 略).

(汝若問他, 他就全不贊成)

He *would* be very thankful to you for this kindness (“*if* you were to do him the kindness 略).

(汝若親愛他，他就感謝汝)

(4) *A Doubt or Supposition.*

懷疑或推測

直說法表示事實時，而有某前提法之動詞爲接續詞先立者，即含有懷疑或推測之意。

Murder, *though it have* no tongue, will speak.

(殺人之犯人者，雖其無舌，猶且自辯)

If he but *speak*, I will shoot him.

(若其僅是發言，則余將斃他)

Whether he *allow* me or not, I will go to him.

(不論其許余與否余將適彼矣)

Provided he *confess* his fault, I will pardon him.

(彼若懺悔其過失，余將宥彼)

Unless he *consent*, we can do nothing.

(若其不承諾，余將無事可爲)

備考。一近世英語之傾向，雖有懷疑或推測之言辭，亦多以直說法以代前提法。

§ 9 章九.—INFINITIVE MOOD.

無 定 法

231. 無定法，絕不與何等之主辭連用。故無所謂數及人稱。

此法是不記述動者，惟記述動作耳。

學者應尚能記憶直說法，前提法及命令法是稱爲有定動詞也。然彼何以如是而見稱乎，蓋以其數及人稱，而限定依其主辭也。（參照 § 116 及 199）至於茲所研究動詞之部分爲無定，無定云者，即無定動詞 (Infinitive)，分詞 (Participle)，動名詞 (Gerund) 是也（參照 § 17）。

232. 無定法之形，其數有四，且皆是現在時。

<i>Form.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
<i>Indefinite</i>	To send (去寄)	To be sent
<i>Continuous</i>	To be sending	(無)
<i>Perfect</i>	To have sent	To have been sent
<i>Perfect Continuous</i> ...	To have been sending	(無)

無定法是無過去時及未來時，籍曰有之，其未來時亦僅可用句語以表之耳：如：—

To be about to send. (將近去寄)

To be on the point of sending. (同上)

To be going to send. (同上)

233. Omission of "to" "to" 之省略——“To” 字是爲通常無定法之符號也。雖然，時亦有省畧之者。

(a) “To” 字省畧於主要動詞之後：—

Please do this—please to do this.

(請做此事)

I hear thee speak (to speak) of a better land.

(余聞其說及一更好之陸地)

I saw him take (to take) aim with his bow.

(余見彼觀定其目的而射)

You *need* not send (to send) those books to me.

(君無須寄該種書來余)

I *feel* the cold air strike (to strike) against my face.

(余覺寒氣侵吾面)

He *dared* not say (to say) this in open day.

(他不敢於晝間言此事)

He *made* me come (to me) and sit (to sit) beside him.

(他使余來且令坐於其側)

I *let* him go (to go) back to his own house.

(余許彼回其家)

They *bade* me tell (to tell) them the right road.

(他們吩咐余告彼等以正途)

We *watched* him go (to go) and come (to come).

(我等看守他一去一來)

We *beheld* the fish rise (to rise).

(我等靜觀魚躍)

I have known him laugh (to laugh) for nothing.

(余已知其無爲而笑)

備考.—“Dare”用於肯定文之時，其後之“to”字則不省畧；如：“he dares to go”（彼不敢去）。

(b) “To”字又省畧於一切助動詞之後：—

I shall go = I intend to go. (余就去)

I should go = I ought to go. (余應去)

I can go = I am able to go. (余能去)

I could go = I was able to go. (余實能去)

I must go = I am compelled to go. (余須要去)

I may go = I am permitted to go. (余可以去)

I might *go* = I was permitted *to go*. (余寔可以去)

I will *go* = I am willing *to go*. (余將去)

I would *go* = I was willing *to go*. (余欲去)

I do not *go* = I *go not*. (余不去)

I did *go* = I went. (余已去)

(c) “To” 字亦省略於動詞 “had” 之後；如 “had better,” “had rather,” “had sooner,” “had as soon” 等句語；例如：—

You had better not *remain* here.

(汝不逗留於此更好)

I had rather *take* this than that.

(余寧取此勝於取彼)

I had sooner *run* than walk.

(余走快過行)

I had as soon *run* as walk.

(余步行如疾走)

備考 — “Had” 字用於此是為前提法之意義，即 “would have” 之意也。“I had better not remain here” 者，“I would have (it) better not to remain here” 之意也；詳言之為 “it would be better for me not to remain” 之意。（最好余不勾留于此）

(d) “To” 字又省略於接續詞 “than” 之後：—

He is better able *to walk* than *run* (=than he is able to run). (他之能行勝過走)

(e) 前置詞之 “but” 有動詞之 “do” 置在前時，則 “to” 又可以省略于其後：—

He *did* nothing but *laugh* (=to laugh).

(他一無所為，惟笑而已)

The two kinds of Infinitive.

二種之無定法

234. 無定法有二種，其形雖同，但其代表各種詞類之用法則迥異：—

I. The Noun Infinitive 名詞無定法；或名 Simple 單純無定法。

II. The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive 動名詞狀無定法或形容無定法。

備考。— 古代英語，其單純無定法 (Simple Infinitive)，原是一名詞，本無“to”字以置於前。但目的意義之動名詞，於其後為變名詞無定法 (Noun Infinitive) 之位語尾者，則用前置詞之“to”以表之。職是之故，而名詞無定法與動名詞狀無定法 (Gerund Infinitive) 之名稱所由生也。然現今亦常附“to”於名詞無定法矣。

註。— 古昔有兩形之區別；如：—

Noun-Infinitive.— *Drinc-an.*

Gerund-ial Infinitive.— *To drinc-anne.*

但隨時日歲月之變遷，而 *-an* 與 *anne* 之添尾字，俱歸消失。于是昔之僅屬附于 Gerund-ial Infinitive 之前置詞 *to* 者，今則並 Noun-Infinitive 而亦附之，遂成爲兩者皆同其形；如：—

Noun-Infinitive.— *To drink.*

Gerund-ial Infinitive.— *To drink.*

235. 名詞無定法之用法如左：——(a) 用爲動詞之主辭，(b) 用爲動詞之賓辭，(c) 用爲動詞之完成辭，(d) 用爲某前置詞之賓辭。(e) 爲感歎文之一種：—

(a) 動詞之主辭：—

To err (=error) is human; to forgive (=forgiveness) is divine. (過失者人事也) (赦罪者神道也)

(b) 動詞之賓辭：一

They expect *to succeed* (=success).

(他望成功)

A good man dose not fear *to die* (=death).

(仁人不畏死)

(c) 動詞之完成辭：一

He appears *to be* a wise man. (自動詞之完成辭)

(他似賢人)

They ordered him *to be punished*. (變成動詞之完成辭)

(他們吩咐罰他)

I can *go*; I may *go*; I might *go*; 等. (助動詞之完成辭)

(d) 揭於下者爲前置詞之賓辭：一

He was *about* (=near) *to die* (=death).

(他將死)

They came *for to see* (=for seeing) the sport.

(彼等爲視運動而來)

They desired nothing *except or but to succeed* (=success.)

(彼等於成功之外無所望)

He did nothing else *than laugh*.

(他於笑之外無所爲)

備考。一如上文“*fort to see*”一句，雖新約全書中屢用之。但現今殆不用矣。現今所用者，於“*for*”字往往省畧。故名詞無定法，變成動名詞狀無定法。

(e) 感歎文之一種：一

Foolish fellow! *to suppose* that he could be pardoned?

(蠢漢，猶望其赦宥守)

備考。一如此組織之無定法，是爲絕對 (286)。

233. 動名詞狀或形容無定法之用法如左：——(a) 形容乎動詞，(b) 形容乎名詞，(c) 形容乎形容詞，(d) 插入括弧之註解。

(a) 爲目的，原因，或結果之意義，而形容動詞：—

He came *to see* (for the purpose of seeing) the sport.

(目的) [彼來觀(爲觀物之目的)遊戲]

He wept *to see* (because of seeing) that sight. (原因)

[彼因見(見之原因)彼光景而泣]

He worked hard only *to be* (with the result of being) de-

feated at last. (結果) [彼勉力而做，但失敗於最終耳(收失敗之果)]

(b) 爲目的之意義，而形容名詞，無定法之用於此法，爲修飾的有之，敘述的亦有之 (§ 113)：—

{ A house *to let*. (修飾的用法 *attributive use*.)
(一間屋出租)

{ This house is *to let*. (敘述的用法 *Predicative use*.)
(動詞之完成辭)

{ Give him a chair *to sit in*. (修飾的用法)
(授張椅他坐)

{ Your condition is *to be pitied*. (敘述的用法)
(汝之境遇可憐哉)

備考，一於此等用法，其動詞爲自動詞如“sit”者，則不可不連續之以前置詞，若僅言“a chair to sit”則誤矣。

(c) 爲關係或目的之意義而形容形容詞：—

Quick *to hear* and slow *to speak*.

(敏于聽而訥于言)

上文“quick”之所關係或目的之所向者在“to hear”而

“slow”之所關係或目的之所向者在“to speak.”

(a) 插入刮弧之註解，即用一句插入文章中以詳解其事也：—

I am,—to tell you the truth,—quite tired of this work.

(余寔告汝，余是疲于此役矣)

They were thunderstruck,—so to speak,—or hearing this

new. (彼等聞此消息而駭如被雷擊云)

備考.—在 (a) 及 (c) 例之動名詞狀無定法，是為副詞之作用。在 (b) 例是為形容詞之作用。在 (d) 例是為絕對，參照 § 28 (b)。

§ 10 章十.—PARTICIPLES 分詞

237. 諸種分詞之形，表如左：—

Transitive Verbs.

Active Voice. Passive Voice.

<i>Present or Continuous</i>	Loving	Being loved
<i>Past</i> " "(無)	Loved
<i>Perfect</i> " "Having loved	Having been loved

Intransitive Verbs.

<i>Present or Continuous</i>	Fading
<i>Past</i> " "Fade
<i>Perfect</i> " "Having faded

註.—自動詞因無語氣之別，故於分詞亦無原動語氣形。

238. **Double Character of Participles 分詞之複性質**——分詞者，動詞與形容相合而成者也，此複詞類曾於 § 18 略言之，茲更於此分別詳解其二種之性質如左：—

(1) 有定動詞之一部分. (2) 形容名詞之形容詞

I. 有定動詞之一部分

239. 學者固已慣見英文動詞多少之時，皆假過去分詞或現在分詞以造形矣。是以一切被動語氣之時，有過去分詞以繼其後時，則不用動詞之“to be”以造形；如，“I am loved,” “I was loved,” “I shall be loved.”

又一切原動語氣之連續時，有現在分詞以其繼後時，亦不用動詞之“to be”以造形；如，“I am loving,” “I was loved,” “I shall be loving.”

又原動語氣之完全形，有過去分詞以繼後時，則不用動詞之“to have”以造形，如，“I have loved,” “I had loved,” “I shall have loved.”

II. 如形容詞

240. 分詞用之如形容詞時，是屬於敘述形容詞之種類 (§ 90)，與其他敘述形容詞同一作用。試舉其用法如下；(a) 形容乎名詞，(b) 被形容於副詞，(c) 有比較法之程度，(d) 用之如名詞：—

(a) *Being tired of work, the men went home.*

(勞働至疲時，各人於是歸去). 形容名詞之 men.

(b) *This man was picked up in an almost dying state.*

(此人於幾死之際救起來). 形容副詞之 almost.

(c) *This flower is more fade than that.*

(此花比於彼花更萎). 以 more 示比較之程度.

(d) *I am much pleased with my surroundings.*

(余對吾周圍之事物甚滿意). 用如名詞，更附以 s 而成複數.

None are so soon forgotten as the dead.

(如彼死者，無有如是其速忘之). dead 加以冠詞 the 而成名詞.

241. 分詞固以一部之動詞而變成形容詞也，故亦可以引用賓辭。至其賓之種類，約有下揭之五種：一

Having shot *the tiger*, he returned home. (直接賓辭)

(彼打了虎之後，即回家去)

He is here, teaching *his sons* Greek. (間接賓辭)

(他是在此教其諸子以希臘語)

Having been taught *Greek*, he was a good scholar.

(保存賓辭) (他被教過希臘語後，即成爲良學者)

He was fighting a hard *battle*. (同種賓辭)

(他現在戰得苦戰)

Having sat *himself* down, he* began to eat. (反身賓辭)

(他既坐下，然後始食)

242. Past Participle 過去分詞。——此分詞之用法，是依其動詞之爲他動與自動而異其趣。

(a) 若動詞爲他動詞，則過去分詞絕不用於原動語氣，惟用於被動語氣而已：一

This much-*praised* man proved to a rogue.

(此被贊賞之人，分明是惡人)

Gold is a metal *dug* out of the earth.

(黃金是由地中所掘出一種之金屬)

註。一以上兩例中，其 *praised* 是被讚之意，*dug* 是被掘之意，皆被動語氣也。

(b) 若動詞爲自動詞，則過去分詞是全不用於一切之動詞。即用之(屬於習慣)亦必先於名詞而非後於名詞：一

The *faded* rose (萎玫瑰花). A *failed* candidate (失敗候補者)

A *retired* officer (退職官員). The *returned* soldier (旋歸)

* he 與 himself 同指一人，故 himself 謂之反身。

兵士) The *dead* horse (死馬) The *fallen* city (墟都市)

The *risen* sun (昇之日) A *withered* flower (凋殘之花)

若于談話或作文時，欲置自動詞之過去分詞於其名詞之後者，則必要插入複牒代名詞而變分詞爲有定動詞。

The horse of Mr. A, *proceeded* to England, is for sale.

上文是錯誤。其文應插入複牒代名之 *who*，又變 *proceeded* 爲 *has proceeded* 之有定動詞。

The horse of Mr. A, *who has proceeded* to England, is for sale. (A 君之馬已發去英嶺出賣) 但此 *who* 是 because he 之意。

試改正下文之誤：—

1. There is now no scent in the rose *faded* this morning.
2. Lamps are lighted from oil *risen* out of the earth.
3. This was the sword of the soldier *returned* to his country.
4. I am sorry for the candidate *failed* in the examination.

答案及譯解

(1) There is now no scent in the rose *that failed* this morning.

(今朝此已凋之玫瑰而無香味)

(2) Lamps are lighted from oil *that has risen* out of the earth.

(洋燈是以由地中產出之油爲点火)

(3) This was the sword of the soldier *who had returned* to his country.

(此是歸來其國之兵士之劍也)

(4) I am sorry for the candidate *who failed* in the last examination.

(余是對於前回受試驗之落弟生而爲之惜)

但自動詞之過去分詞，亦有時於韻文會見其置於其名詞之後：—

A Daniel *come* to judgment.—*Shakespeare*.

[大呢爾(即著名裁判官之意)來裁判]。此自動詞之分詞 *come*，是置在 Daniel 之後。

Mourn for the brace—the brave that are no more.

All *sunk* beneath the wave, hard by their native shore.—

Cowper. (日憐惜乎英雄，而英雄早已無存於此世矣，蓋凡英雄每沈於其祖國近岸怒濤之底也)。此自動詞之分詞 *sunk*，是置在 all 之後。

散文亦間有置自動詞之過去分詞於其名詞之後，但極罕耳：—

In times *past* = in times which have passed.

(過去之時代)

He is a man *descended* from a high family.

(他是由貴族降下之人也)

此用法是極為例外，而決不可放效之。

243. 動詞之過去分詞，有時用為表示永久之習慣，狀態，或性質：—

A well *read* man = a man who has read much and read well. (一善讀書積學之人)

A well-*behead* man = a man whose habitual behaviour is good. (好品行之人)

An out-*spoken* man = a man who habitually speaks out his mind. (開誠佈公之人)

A *retired* man = a man who makes a habit of retiring from public notice, a man of a retiring disposition.

(退隱之人)

因有此用法，於是生出一大種類之形容詞，而此形容詞亦是加 *ed* 於名詞之字末而成。

An evil-*heart*-ed man. (惡心人)

A hot *heart*-ed man. (熱心人)

A *land*-ed proprietor. (地主)

A long-*tailed*-ape. (長尾猿)

A smooth-*skin*-ed cat. (滑毛貓)

His *saint*-ed mother. (他的神聖之母)

A red-*colour*-ed rose. (紅色之玫瑰)

A rough-*face*-ed youth. (粗面少年)

A *hood*-ed snake. (有冠蛇)

A long*leg*-ed-spider. (長脚蜘蛛)

A purple-*crest*-ed helmet. (飾紫毛之盔)

A many-*page*-d book. (多頁數之書)

A long-*arm*-ed monkey. (長臂之猴)

A thickly-*wood*-ed hill. (樹木叢生之小山)

A noble-*mind*-ed man. (意氣慷慨人)

A warm-*blood*-ed animal. (溫血動物)

244. Meaning Implied in Participle 含蓄於分詞之意義。——分詞固宜作動詞狀形容詞以形容其名詞者分解之。但其尚於此外含有廣義。蓋變分詞句為分詞節時，其表示事物更充分一層也。至其所含蓄之意義如左；(a) 時 (time), (b) 原因或理由 (Cause or Reason), (c) 假定 (Condition), (d) 讓步或對照 (Concession or contrast).

(a) 時

Walking along the street (= *while* I was walking), I met

a friend. (余行於街上時, 適遇吾友)

Having met my friend (= *after I had met my friend*), I went back with him to his house. (余過吾友後, 即與他歸其家)

(b) 原因或理由

Being tired with the toil (= *because he was tired*), he sat down to rest. (因他已疲極, 故坐下一息)

The letter, *having been addressed* (= *because it was addressed*), to the wrong house, never reached me. (此信誤寫別家之住址, 所以絕不寄到我)

(c) 假定

Turning to the left (= *if you turn to the left*), you will find the place you went. (若轉過左邊, 則將尋得汝所訪之地方)

(d) 讓步或對照

Admitting (= *through I admit*) what you say, I still think that you made a mistake. (汝所言雖是, 但余尚以汝為錯)

He *being* dead (= *although he is dead*), yet speaketh.—*New Testament*. (彼人雖死猶言)

§ 11 章十一.—GERUNDS AND VERBAL NOUNS.

動名詞及動詞狀名詞

245. 動名詞有四形, 原動語氣二, 被動語氣二.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Present or Continuous</i>	Loving	Being loved
<i>Perfect</i> .. "	Having loved	Having been loved

246. 動名詞之諸形與分詞之諸形'原是相同,且二者皆是屬於動詞之部分.然則何由而分別之乎.蓋動名詞是名詞之一種,而分是形容詞之一種.故其形雖同,其性質則全異.

動名詞與分詞兩形相類之理由,觀此兩字之歷史可以明之.往昔英語之動詞狀形容詞與動詞狀名詞.其兩形全異.

分詞(即動詞狀形容詞).....Writende.

動名詞(即動詞狀名詞).....Writing.

近世英語 ende 與 ung 之兩添尾字.漸變遷為 ing,故吾等今日亦只可用此一形以代表其兩字可也.

分詞.....Writing.

動名詞.....Writing.

247. Double Character of Gerund 動名詞之複性質.——此複性詞類之動名詞,其由名詞與動詞相合而成之理,曾於 18 節略論其大意.茲於此更分別詳解其二種之性質.

(1) 名詞之一種

(2) 動詞之一部分

動名詞既為名詞之一種,故其可為動詞之主辭(自動或他動詞),或為動詞之賓辭(他動詞),又或為動詞之完成辭(自動詞或變成動詞),又或為前置詞之賓辭;如:—

動詞之主辭.—*Sleeping* is necessary to life.

(睡為人生所必要)

動詞之賓辭.—He enjoyed *sleeping* in the open air,

(他喜睡於有空氣處)

動詞之完成辭.—His almost constant habit was *sleeping*.

(他殆不變其食睡之辭)

1 世有文法書稱動名詞為分詞狀名詞 (Participle Noun), 此名應駁之矣. 蓋動名詞自為詞類之一部, 而分詞又自為詞類之一, 兩不相涉也.

前置詞之賓辭.—He was fond of *sleeping*.

(他好睡)

試答出下文各草体字之孰爲動名詞及孰爲分詞：—

- (1) The rice will grow well in the *coming* rains. (2) We heard of his *coming* back to-day. (3) Did you hear of his *having won* a prize? (4) The boy *having won* a prize was much praised. (5) She was fond of *being admired*. (6) *Being admired* by all she was much pleased. (7) The cow *having been killed* by a tiger yesterday could not be found. (8) The boy was ashamed of *having been beaten* in class by his sister. (9) I am tired of *doing* this work. (10) *Doing* this work every day you will soon improve. (11) *Spelling* is more difficult than *writing*. (12) He was in the habit of *boasting* of his cleverness. (13) A *boasting* man is much despised.

答案及譯解

1. *Coming*—分詞. (米是將於雨期而生長)
2. *Coming*—動名詞. (我等聞他今日歸來)
3. *Having won*—動名詞. (汝曾聞彼之獲賞乎)
4. *Having won*—分詞. (童子因獲賞而大受褒獎)
5. *Being admired*—動名詞. (彼女好受褒獎)
6. *Being admired*—分詞. (彼女既蒙各人讚賞後遂大歡喜)
7. *Having been killed*—分詞. (昨日被虎咬殺之牛母不能尋獲)
8. *Having been beaten*—動名詞. (彼童子恥被其姊在教室打他)
9. *Doing*—動名詞. (余是疲於此役)
10. *Doing*—分詞. (每日爲此事業. 汝將速有進步)
11. *Spelling*—動名詞, *writing*—同辭. (拼音更難於寫字)

12. Boasting—動名詞. (彼有誇己聰明之癖)

13. Boasting—分詞. (自誇之人甚賤)

248. **A Gerund an Abstract Noun 動名詞是抽象名詞**：——動名詞是抽象名詞之一種，且與本來之抽象名詞或名詞無定法，同一之意義，此理曾於 44 節說明之矣。

Gerund.—*Sleeping is necessary to health.*

(睡眠為健康上之所必要)

Noun-Infinitive.—*To sleep is necessary to health.*

Abstract Noun.—*Sleep is necessary to health.*

249. **Gerund with an Object 有賓辭之動名詞**：——動名詞固是動詞之一部也，故其後亦可以引用賓辭。至其賓辭總有五種，已於 § 193 之備考述之。茲更再舉之如下：—

直接賓辭(添於他動詞).—*He is clever at teaching Euclid.*

(他是精於教歐克列)

間接賓辭(添於他動詞).—*He is clever at teaching his sons*

Euclid. (他是精於教其子以歐克列)

保存賓辭(添於被動語氣).—*He is pleased at being taught*

Euclid. (他是喜教其子歐克列)

同種賓辭(添於自動詞).—*He is proud of having fought a good fight.*

(他勝了一得意之戰遂自驕)

反身賓辭(添於他動詞).—*He is in the habit of oversleep-*

ing himself. (他有沉睡之癖)

250. **Gerund with Possessives 有領位辭之動名詞**：——名詞或代名詞之表示人類或動物者，若其位在動名詞之前時，必要使之成為領位乃合：—

I was pleased at *his* coming to-day. (若云 “I was pleased at *him* coming to-day” 則誤)

(他今日之來, 余寔歡喜)

He was displeased at the *barber's* not coming. (若云 “He was displeased at the barber not coming” 則誤)

(理髮人之不來, 他寔不快)

如云 “I ask *your favour* of doing this,” 是學者通常之謬誤, 此文若改正之歸於正格, 其組織應如下:——“I ask the favour of *your doing* this. (煩汝爲此事)

備考 1.——名動詞亦有如下文之用法, 其名詞或代名詞置在先:—

This was a work of *my doing* (= done by me).

(此事是余做之事)

That house was of *an architect's designing* (= designed by an architect).

(彼屋是由建築家設計畫成之也)

備考 2.——“a” 字或用於前置詞之意義時, 亦有置之於動名詞之前:—

This set him *a-thinking*. (此事在彼之思索中)

The man has gone *a-hunting*. (其人已去獵)

此 “a” 是前置詞 *on* 之轉訛或略語者。

251. Gerundive use of Participles 分詞之動名詞的用法:——分詞固非名動詞也, 但其亦可以用於名動詞的意義。

I depend on the wall *being built* immediately.

(余恃此牆之趕速成)

使此 “wall” 若能用爲領位形, 則吾人固可云 “I depend on the *wall's* being built immediately.” 然而不可也, 何則, 蓋無生命物必不能成領位形也者 (參照 § 64). 以是之故, 而此文不能不改其構造如左:—

I depend on the *wall* being built immediately.

但“being built”之用於此連續地位，當何如解剖之乎。彼固不足謂為普通之分詞，蓋以其不僅形容名詞之“wall”已也。大抵此文之意，非“I depend on the wall”之意，實為“I depend on the *wall being built* immediately”之意。即“on the immediate *building* of the wall”（牆之趕速築造）是也，準此以談。則動名詞或動名詞狀名詞，寔含蓄於此分詞“being built”之中矣，然則稱此分詞為動名詞的分詞 Gerundive Participles 又奚疑。

備考 1. 一動名詞的分詞，可以表未來時即「某事尚可為」之意味。但不表過去時或現在時耳：—

I depend on the fact or promise that the wall *will be built* immediately. (余恃其牆有可速造之實際或要約)

備考 2. 一動名詞的分詞，亦可以添用於自動詞，而同時並能表示未來時：—

(a) What do you think of my *horse running* to-day?

即“what do you think of the plan or proposal that my horse *shall run* to-day?” (余之馬今日將跑，關於其計畫或議案汝意云何)

(b) What do you think of my *horse's running* to-day?

即 what do you think of the style or pace at which my horse *ran* to-day? (余之馬今日所跑之儀表或步伐汝意云何)

此“running”非是分詞用於動名詞之意義，寔一真正之動名詞，而為領位名詞所先立耳。(a)例之動名詞的分詞是表未來時，(shall or will run) 而 (b)之動名詞是表示過去時 (ran)，此點又不可不注意。

252. 本來之動詞狀名詞 (Verbal noun proper)，與本來之動名詞 (Gerund proper) 不是同一物。

凡爲動詞狀名詞者，則必有有定冠詞置在先，及有前置詞之
of 繼於後；至動名詞則無先立之冠詞亦無繼後之前置詞：一

(a) I am engaged in *the* reading of a book (*Verbal Noun.*)

(b) I am engaged in reading a book (*Gerund.*)

(余從事於讀書中)

在 (a) 例之 “reading” 是一單詞類，一名詞之外無他物。

(b) 例 “reading” 是一複詞類，名詞更與動詞相合而成。

Parsing Models for Verbs.

動詞解剖之模範

(1) *The horse was taken to the stable.*

(馬已牽歸馬欄)

Was taken.—Verb transitive, third person, singular number, past tense (indefinite), indicative mood, 動詞 “to take” 之被動語氣，與其主位或主辭之 horse 爲一致。

(2) *The man and his friend walked into the field.*

Walked.—Verb intransitive, third person, plural number, past tense (indefinite), 動詞 “to walked” 之直說法，與其兩主辭之 “man” 及 “friend” 爲一致。

(2) *I have long been absent from home.*

(久矣乎余之離家也)

Have been.—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, present perfect tense, 動詞 “to be” 之直說法，與其主辭之 “I” 爲一致。

(4) *I shall go home, but you will stop here.*

(余將歸家但汝返適於此)

Shall go.—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, future tense, 動詞 “to go” 之直說法，與其主辭之 “I” 爲一致。

Will stop.—Verb intransitive, second person, singular number, future tense, 動詞 “to stop” 之直說法，與其主辭之 “you” 爲一致。

(5) *Were I in his place, I would pay the rupee.*

Were.—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, past tense, 動詞 “to be” 之前提法, 與其主辭之 “I” 爲一致.

Would pay.—Verb transitive, first person, singular number, past tense, 動詞 “to pay” 之前提法, 與其主辭之 “I” 爲一致.

(6) *Take a seat on this bench.* (請在此凳一坐)

Take.—Verb transitive, second person, singular number, 動詞 “to take” 之命令法, 與其省畧主辭之 “thou” 或 “you” 爲一致.

(7) *You need not send those book to me.*

Send.—Verb transitive, infinitive mood.

(8) *Having found his friend he was much pleased.*

Having found.—Verb transitive, 動詞 “to find” 之完全分詞, 而形容代名詞之 he.

(9) *He was much pleased at having found his friend.*

Having found.—Verb transitive, 動詞 “to find” 之動名詞完全形, 前置詞 “at” 之賓辭.

Chapter VI. 第六編

ADVERBS. 副詞

§ I 章一.—THE KINDS OF ADVERBS.

副詞之種類

253. **Adverb Defined 副詞之定義：**——副詞者，形容名詞或代名詞以外之各詞類之辭也（參照 § 12）。

備考。—在他文法書，其副詞之定義云。——“副詞者，是用爲形容動詞，形容詞，或其他副詞之語*也”云云。但副詞往往更能形容前置詞及接續詞。彼之定義如此，是明謬誤。學者不可不注意：—

Angus 及 Bain 兩君亦承認副詞之効力，不僅形容動詞，形容詞，及其他副詞之說。但仍拘滯於古之定義。至 mason 亦承認之，雖其定義亦與古之定義相去不遠，然彼於 1891 年出版之 English Grammar 105 頁之附註有云，「副詞有時形容乎前置詞」，是則古之定義雖誤，而彼能作是言，亦算進一步精密也。

(a) 形容乎前置詞：一

The bird flew *exactly over* sleeper's head.

(鳥正從睡者之頭上飛過)

He paid the money *quite up* to date.

(他還銀依期)

This mistake was made *entirely through* your fault.

(此過誤是全出於汝自己之過失)

He was sitting *almost outside* the door.

(他幾乎坐出門外)

He arrived *long before* the time.

(他久已先於其時到來)

He wept *partly through* sorrow and *partly through* angers.

(他半由悲而泣, 半由憤而泣)

(b) 形容乎接續詞：一

A man is truly happy *only when* he is in sound health.

(人於完全健康時, 即是真幸福)

I dislike this place *simply because* the air is too hot.

(余所以厭此處者, 單爲其天氣太熱耳)

I wish to know *precisely how* it happened.

(其事之如何起, 余欲知之精確)

They locked the door *shortly before* the thieves came.

(彼等關門未久而盜賊來)

The watch was found long after the thieves had been caught.

(賊被捕已久之後, 而懷中時計乃尋得)

He has been ill *ever since* he left us.

(他與吾輩別後常臥病)

謂副詞僅形容前置詞, 抑謂形容由前置詞導入之全句, 此皆無關重要。又謂副詞僅形容接續詞, 抑謂形容乎繼於接續

詞之全節，亦兩無所誤。

備考。一凡以副詞句代用本來之副詞時，亦可作本來副詞看，蓋其形容前置詞或接續詞之作用，原與本來副詞同也：一

形容乎前置詞。—He arrived *a few hours after* midnight.

(他過半夜後二三時而到來)

形容乎接續詞。—He recovered *ten days after* he had been taken ill. (彼人罹病十日後便快復)

254. 副詞之所能形容者，不僅限於單辭，蓋能形容完全之確定文也 (§ 21). 在此用法，其副詞必冠於此文之首。

Unfortunately the thieves was not caught.

(晦氣，不能捉得該賊)

Evidently you were much distressed at the news.

(顯然汝是因此消息而甚悲矣)

上二文可以改書如次：一

It is unfortunate that the thief was not caught.

It was evident that you were much distressed.

255. 副詞是不形容名詞或代名詞，至形容名詞或代名詞者，是形容詞之作用，而非副詞之作用。

然亦有不依定規而用之者，驟觀之似背例，但細解釋之而亦非背於規，則，試舉其例於下：一

(a) I am *sincerely yours*.*

That book is *certainly mine*.

(彼書一定是我的)

此“yours”及“mine”是“you”與“I”之領位形，故其原與形容詞同等 (§ 145). 是則“sincerely”及“cer-

* 此是普通信札之結尾語，「余是君之誠實者」之意，蓋西人重誠實故用此。

tainly”之副詞，非是形容乎代名詞，乃為形容乎形容詞耳。

(b) A by-path (一側徑); a fore-taste (預想之樂); an out-house (一附屬建築物).

此副詞不是形容幾個之名詞，乃與名詞合成而成單一之混合語。

下揭各例，其名詞前之副詞，非是形容其名詞，乃形容其省略之分詞或形容詞：—

The then king = the king then *reigning*

(當時統治之王)

The late king = the king lately *reigning*.

(近頃統治之王)

The above account = the account *given above*.

(上述之事)

A far country = a country far *distant*.

(遠國)

An up mail = an up-*going* mail.

(上行郵船)

(d) 下揭之例，其“almost”之副詞，非形容乎名詞之“drunkard,”乃形容乎動詞之“is”：—

He is *almost* a drunkard.

(彼殆一泥醉者)

上文若改云“He is an almost drunkard”則大誤。

256. 副詞大別為三種：—

I. Simple 單純副詞. II. Interrogative 疑問副詞

III. Relative 複牒副詞.

257. Simple Adverbs 單純副詞：—此單純副詞，可以

從其意義上細別之：一

(a) Time (時之副詞)：一

He did this *before*, and you have done it *since*. (彼以前做過此而汝以後做之) He will *soon* arrive. (他不久就到) He was taken ill *yesterday*. (他昨日染病)

屬於此部之重要副詞概如左：一

Now (今), then (然後), before (以前), since (以後), ago (以前), already (已經), soon (不久), presently (即時), immediately (即刻), instantly (即時), early (早), late (遲), after-wards (以後), yesterday (昨日), to-morrow (明日), to-day (今日).

(b) Place (位置之副詞)：一

We must rest *here* and not *there*.

(我等須休息于此而不可于彼)

屬於此部之重要副詞概如左：一

Here (此處), there (彼處), hence (由此處), thence (由彼處), hither (此方), thither (彼方), in (內), out (外), within (內部), without (外部), above (上頭), below (下邊), inside (內側), outside (外側), far (遠), near (近), 及其他。

(c) Number (數之副詞)：一

He did this *once*, but he will not do it *again*.

(他已做此一次, 但其不再做之矣)

屬於此部之重要副詞概如左：一

Once (一次), twice (兩次), thrice (三次), again (再), seldom (稀), never (並無), sometime (有時), always (常時), often (屢屢), firstly (第一), secondly (第二), thirdly (第三).

(d) Manner (方法之副詞), Quality (性質之副詞),

或 State (狀態之副詞):—

He did his work *slowly*, but *surely*

(他行其事甚緩, 但認真)

屬於此部之副詞概如左:—

Thus (如此), so (如此), well (好), ill (惡), amiss (錯誤), badly (惡), probably (多分), certainly (確定), conveniently (便), 等.

(e) Quantity (分量之副詞), Extent (範圍之副詞), 或 Degree (程度之副詞):—

He almost, but not quite, the cleverest boy in the class.

(他幾爲此級中之最伶俐童子, 但未十分耳)

屬於此部之副詞概如左:—

Very (甚), much (多), too (太過), quite (十分), almost (幾乎), little (少), a little (一的), rather (寧可), somewhat (有幾分), half (半), partly (部分), wholly (全体), so (僅), 等.

備考 I.—Thus, so, the 此三字已特稱爲指示副詞(Demonstrative Adverbs), 蓋以其類似指示形容詞也. 即 thus 與 the 類於“this”或“that,”又 so 類於“such,”俱是表方法或範圍之意義.

Thus.—He did it *thus*. (此方法或彼方法之意)

(他行之如此)

So.—He loved her *so*. (此樣之方法或此樣之範圍)

(他愛彼女如此)

The.—He worked *the* (至彼範圍之意) harder, because he had been encourage. (他能做此苦工, 因其已奮志也)

備考 2.—副詞之“the”與有定冠詞之“the”迥異, 彼是代表指示副詞之舊變化(詳見下 § 261 之備考), 且除用於比較級之形容詞或副詞之前外, 餘皆不能用. 副詞之“the”是古之器用位 (Instrumental case) thi 也.

(f) **Affirming** (肯定之副詞), 或 **Denying** (否定之副詞):—

He did *not* come after all. (他非後各人而來)

屬於此部之副詞則於左:—

Yes, no, not, yea (然), nay (否), not at all (不全然), by all means (一定).

258. Interrogative Adverb 疑問副詞.——疑問副詞之所以取名者, 以其用為發問也.

(a) **Time**:—

When did he come? (他何時已經來到呢)

(b) **Place**:—

How long will he remain? (他將在此逗留幾久呢)

Where did he stop? (他止於何處呢)

Whence has he come? (他由何處來呢)

Whither is he going? (他現去何處呢)

(c) **Number**:—

How often did the dog bark? (犬已吠了多少呢)

(d) **Manner Quality or State**:—

How did he do this? (他如何為此呢)

How (康健之情形如何) is he to-day? (他今日如何呢) (問病者之病狀)

(e) **Quantity or Degree**:—

How far (至如何範圍) was that report true? (此傳說果是幾真實呢)

(f) **Cause (原因) Reason (理由)**:—

Why (為何理由) did he do this? (他為何理由為此呢)

Wherefore did she weep? (彼女為何故而泣呢)

259. 副詞之“how”字，有時用於感嘆之意義：—

How kind of you to do that! (汝爲彼事真懇摯哉)

How often have you been cautioned! (汝真是時常謹慎哉)

What 字用于分量或程度之意義時，亦同樣可以用于感嘆之意義：—

What a foolish fellow you are! (汝真一蠢漢哉)

What clever sons you been! (汝諸子真伶俐哉)

230. **Relative Adverbs 複牒副詞**。——複牒副詞與疑問副詞之形皆相同，但複牒副詞不用於發問文，乃結合兩文以成一文。故複牒副詞謂之複詞類，蓋以其由副詞與接續詞合併而成之辭也 (§ 18 (3))。

此複牒副詞取名之理由有二：——(1) 以其如複牒代名詞之作用。而複牒其省略或述出之先行辭；(2) 以其依複牒代名詞以造形：—

(a) 先行辭之省略

This is *where* (=the place in which) we dwell.

(此處是我等所住)

Let me know *when* (=the time by which) you will come.

(汝將何時來請俾余知)

(b) 先行辭之述出

This is the place *where* we dwell.

Let me know the time *when* you will come.

231. **“The” as a Relative Adverb 複牒副詞之 The:**

——“The”字是一分量之複牒副詞，且常被其先行辭之“the”繼其後，此繼其後之“the,”即分量之指示副詞。

The more (wealth) men have, the more they desire,

(其人愈富其望益奢)

The sooner he comes, the better for him.

(彼愈來得早，愈有益于彼)

備考 1.—第一之“the”為複牒副詞，第二之“the”為指示副詞，故其文意可詳解之如左：—

“*To what extent men have more wealth, to that extent they desire more.*”

註.—今若將此文而倒裝之；如“*To that extent they desire more, to what extent men have more wealth.*”則 *to that extent* 為先行辭，而 *to what extent* 為說明先行辭之複牒辭也。是以此二者之關係，無異於先行辭與複牒辭之關係，如此用法之兩副詞，而成此一種特殊之關係者，亦幾為英語中唯一之例外矣。又自組織上文字之位置觀之，而稱其在後者為先行辭，雖似無理。但文之主眼在於 *to that extent they desire more (=the more they desire)*。故自思想上言之，則當推此為先，然則稱之為先行辭固無所誤也。

備考 2.—此 *the.....the* 之對偶副詞，惟用於比較級之某形容詞，或與其他之副詞結合時耳，此外不能用之。

備考 3.—此複牒副詞之“the,”若非有其先行辭之指示副詞“the”繼其後時，則絕不用之。反之而指示副詞之 *the* 可用於單獨(則無複牒副詞)：—

He worked the (to that extent) harder because he had been encouraged by his teacher.

(彼之所以為此苦事者，因其已被其師所勉勵也)

§ 2 章二.—DEGREE OF COMPARISON IN ADVERBS.

副詞之程度比較

262. 副詞亦有如形容詞爲程度之比較，且造形亦同其法：—

(a) 若其字爲一併音，則加 *er* 以成比較級之形，而加 *est* 以成最高級之形：—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Soon 早	sooner	soonest
Long 長	longer	longest
Loud 高聲	louder	loudest
Late 遲	later	latest or last
Near 近	nearer	nearest

(b) 副詞爲程度之比較，有造形於不規則者：—

Well 好	better	best
Ill 或 badly 惡	worse	worst
Much 多	more	most
Little 少	less	least
Forth 先	further	furthest
Far 遠	farther	farthest

(c) 副詞之字尾爲 *ly* 者，則冠之以 *more* 而成比較級之形，冠之 *most* 而成最高級之形：—

Wisely 賢	more wisely	most wisely
Beautiful 美	more beautiful	most beautiful

備考：一副詞之 *early* 尙有 *earlier* 以成比較級之形。

§ 3 章三.—THE FORMS OF ADVERBS.

副詞之形

263. 副詞有與形容詞同一樣之形者：如：—

*Adverb.*He was *much* pleased.

(他是甚得意)

He stayed *long*.

(他久留)

He spoke *loud*.

(他高聲講)

He came *early*.

(他來得早)

He hit him *hard*.

(彼猛擊他)

He came *quick*.

(他來得速)

Stand *near* while I speak.

(立近余乃言)

He was *a little* tired.

(他原是略倦)

He come *only* once.

(他單來一次)

He has slept *enough*.

(他已睡足)

*Adjective.*There is *much* sickness here.

(此處多病症)

He went on a *long* journey.

(他去遠處旅行)

There is a sound *of loud* voices.

(彼處有高聲之响)

He woke up at an *early* hour.

(他在早時醒來)

This is a *hard* piece of wood.

(此是一片硬柴)

They rode *along* at a quick
pace. (彼等急步走進來)He is my *near* relation.

(他是余之近親)

There is *a little* hope now.

(今有些少之希望)

This my *only* son.

(此是余之獨子)

He has eaten *enough* bread.

(他已食足麵包)

264. Adverb in "ly," *ly* 之副詞：——有大多數之副詞，加 *ly* (like 之轉誤) 於形容詞之字末以成形；而此副詞與形容詞之間，常有抽象名詞之成立：--

<i>Adjective.</i>	<i>Abstract Noun.</i>	<i>Adverb.</i>
Wise 賢	wisdom	wisely
Poor 貧	poverty	poorly
High 高	height	highly
Short 短	shortness	shortly

265. Adverbs formed from "the" "he" "who"
 成形於 the he who 之副詞：——此副詞有時謂之代名副詞
 (Pronominal Adverbs)：—

	副 詞				
	靜 止	所 向 之 動 作	所 由 之 動 作	時 候	方 法
指示之 { The He	there 彼處 here 此處	thither 向彼處 hither 向此處	thence 由彼處 hence 由此處	then 然後、其時	thus 如此
複牒之 Who	where 其處	whither 向其處	whence 由其處	when 其時	how 如何
疑問之 Who?	where? 何處	whither? 向何處去	whence? 由何處來	when? 何時	how 如何

上表中之副詞，有大多數與前置詞或其他副詞合成而用：—

與 "there" 合成者；有 therein (其中)，thereto (其外，至其處)，thereat (因此，在其處)，therefore (故此)，therefrom (由彼) therewith (以其)，thereout (此外)，thereon 或 thereupon (而且)，thereof (所以)，thereby (由彼)。

與 "here" 合成者；有 herein (此中)，hereto (至此)，heretofore (自此以前)，hereat (於此，以此)，herewith (以此)，hereon 或 hereupon (於是，在此上)，hereof (自是)，hereby (由此)，hereafter (此後，自此以後)。

與 "where" 合成者；有 wherein (在其中，何在)，whereto (至何處，至彼處)，wherefore (何故)，whereon (所在)。

與 "hither" 合成者；有 hitherto (到此處，或到此時)。

與 "thence" 合成者；有 thenceforth (由其時，由其處，其故)，thenceforward (自此以後)。

與“*hence*”合成者：有 *henceforth* (自今以後), *henceforward* (自今, 而後)。

266. Adverbs formed from Possessive Nouns 由領位名詞造形之副詞：——此副詞有時稱為領位副詞 (*Genitival Adverbs*)：—

Needs (=of need, necessarily). (必要)

Once (=of one, 或 of one time). (一次)

Twice (=of two times). (兩次)

Sometimes (=of sometime). (有時)

Always (=of all way). (常時)

Sideway (=of a sideway). (橫)

Length-ways (=of a length-ways). (縱)

Else (=of other, 由古代英語之“*elles*”轉成). (別個)

267. Adverbs Phrases 副詞句：——英語有大多數之熟句語，為副詞之作用。於是文法上呼之為副詞句 (參照 § 30 a)。

(1) 名詞連續前置詞：—*At random* (昏亂), *of course* (一定, 如俗話「這個自然」), *at length* (終局), *in fact* (寔際), *to boot* (尙且), *of a truth* (寔真)。

(2) 前置詞與名詞混合：—*Indeed* (寔在), *betimes* (合時), *besides* (此外), *between* (兩者之中), *to-day*; *to-morrow*; *asleep* (眠睡), *abed* (在床), *away* (離去)。

備考.—“*Be*”是舊形前置詞之“*by*,”“*a*”是縮形前置詞之“*on*.”

(3) 形容詞連續前置詞，此形容詞所形容其後之名詞或有省畧之者：—In general (一般), in particular (特別), in short (略言), at large (自由), in vain (無効), on high (卓然), of old (昔), after all (究竟), at first (最先), at last (終), at least (少許), at all (全), at most (多極), at best (好極), in future (未來), at present (現在).

(4) 前置詞與形容詞混合。此是如前法，其形容詞所形容其後之名詞亦省畧：—Below (在下), beyond (隔越), behind (在後), abroad (在外), anew (新), awry (不正), across (橫), along (沿), aloud (大聲).

(5) 名詞被形容於形容詞：—Meantime, meanwhile (上二字皆當時之意), midway (中途), yesterday (昨日).

(6) 副詞與前置詞混合：—Forthwith (立即), within (在內), without (在外), forever (永久), at once (同時、一次), before (以前), beneath (在下).

(7) 雜句：—By all means (必定), by no means (斷然), by the by 或 by the way (涉於題外), once on a time (昔), inside out (裡反為外), upside down (覆倒), to be sure (一定), head foremost (先頭), head downwards (下頭), topsy-turvey (上下顛倒), head over heel (頭過於踵、急速).

268. 副詞有時由接續詞之 *and* 結合成對而用者：—

He is walking *up and down, to and fro.*

(他行上行下，行去行來)

He is walking *here and there, hither and thither.*

(他行于此又於彼，行於此方又彼方)

The mice run *in and out, backwards and forwards*,

(小鼠走出又走入, 走於前又走後)

He comes here *now and then*.

(他時時來此處)

He works *off and on*.

(他做工或作或輟)

You will see him *by and by*.

(汝將不久就見他)

§ 4 章四.—VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH ADVERBS.

動詞與副詞混合

269. 動詞與副詞由習慣上之慣用, 有聯兩字而當作一辭用者, 是謂之動詞與副詞混合.

此等副詞除用於韻文之外, 大抵常置於動詞之後; 如, “speak out,” “rise up.” 此 out 應作動詞 “speak” 之一部分解剖之, 而 up 作動詞 “rise” 之一部分解剖之.

但於造成一致之合成名詞時, 此副詞則又宜冠在首:—

Verb.

Noun.

The crops will *come out* well.

(收穫將來出來甚好)

No profits will *come in*.

(將來無利益進入)

Cholera did not *break out*.

(虎列刺病(霍亂)不發生)

He *set out* on his journey.

(他已出發旅行)

The *outcome* was a good crop.

(其結果是好收穫)

His *income* is small.

(他之入息是少)

There was no *outbreak* of Cholera. (無虎列刺病之發生)

He has no trouble at the *outset*.

(彼已無難於開始)

更舉其同例者如左：→

<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Noun.</i>
Set off (分離)	offset (萌芽)
Put out (放出)	output (排泄物)
Fit out (準備)	outfit (旅行之準備)
Shoot off (放射)	offshoot (支流)
Spring off (飛出)	offspring (子孫)
Shoot up (發生)	upshot (結果)
Turn out (轉出, 產出)	outturn (產出物, 產額)
Cast out (投出)	outcast (放逐人)
Set on (襲)	onset (進擊)
Lay out (支出)	outlay (費用)
Look out (注意)	outlook (看守, 光景)
Draw in (引入)	indraught (吸入)
Let out (出)	outlet (出口)
Let in (入)	inlet (入口)
Cry out (叫出)	outcry (叫喚)
Pour out (斟出)	outpour (溢出)

§ 5 章五.—THE TWO USES OF ADVERBS.

副詞之二用法

270. 副詞亦與形容詞同 (參照 § 113), 而用法有二; 即 (a) 修飾的用法, (b) 敘述的用法.

(a) 修飾的用法 (Attributive Use):—副詞之如普通方法, 而逼近於其可形容之語之前或後, 以形容之之時, 是即

用於修飾的也：一

- (a) He is *entirely wrong*. (他是全誤)
 (b) He *shouted loudly*. (他高聲叫)
 (c) He did his work *very badly*. (他做其工甚拙)
 (d) *Half through* the door. (通過戶之半)
 (e) I dislike him *only because* he is lazy. (余所以嫌他者；僅因其怠耳)

註.—(a) 例副詞之 *entirely*, 是逼近于形容詞 *wrong* 之前而形容之。(b) 例副詞 *loudly*, 是逼近于動詞 *shouted* 之後而形容之。(c) 例副詞之 *very*, 是逼近於他之副詞 *badly* 之前而形容之, 又 *badly* 尙形容動詞之 *did*, 但不得逼近, 故在於此位置。(d) 例副詞之 *half*, 是逼近於前置詞 *through* 之前, 而形容之。(e) 例副詞之 *only*, 是逼近于接續詞 *because*, 之前, 而形容之。如此用法, 皆得認爲修飾的用法。

(b) 敘述的用法 (Predicative Use); 一副詞爲文章之一部分時, 換言之即爲先立動詞之完成辭時, 是即用於敘述的也：一

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Complement etc.</i>
My son	is	<i>well</i> (in good health) to-day. (吾兒子今日身體良好)
He	will be	<i>better</i> (in better health) soon. (他不久就身體更良好)
He	was turned	<i>adrift</i> (to go where he could). (他已成漂泊)
The two boys	are	<i>much alike</i> (like much to other) (此兩童子甚相類)
The bear	was caught	<i>alive</i> (in a living state). (此熊是生捉)

- Those men are *aware* (conscious) of their faults.
(彼等人自覺其自己之過)
- The game is *over* (finished).
(賭局之終)
- Some money was still *over* (remaining).
(尚餘剩有多少銀)
- The result are *out* (published).
(其結果已公佈出來)
- The stars are *out* (visible).
(星是出現)
- He was heard *out* (to the very end).
(彼已聞其言之終極)
- The bargain is *off* (cancelled).
(其交易已取消)
- The train is *off* (started).
(汽車已開行)
- He is *well off* (in good circumstances).
(他是好境遇)
- Our side is **in* (having their ininings).
(我等之同事已入來當 ininings 之職)
- The late minister is *in* (holding office) again.
(前之大臣復職)

Chapter VII. 第七編

PREPOSITIONS. 前置詞

271. Preposition defined 前置詞之定義：—— 前置詞

* 此 cricket 圓球戲之語。

者，置於名詞或同等名詞之前，以示其名詞所表之人或物，對於他事物爲如何之關係也 (§ 14)。此名詞或同等名詞是謂之賓辭。

I place my hand on the table.

此文若將“on”字省去，則全文殆無意味。隨便解作 placed *on* the table (放在机之上)，或 *under* the table (机之下)，或 *above* the table (机之上)，皆可。故不插入前置詞之“on,”則“hand”與“table”二者之關係不著。

272. (a) **Adverbs as Objects** 副詞爲賓辭：——時或位置之副詞，可以用爲前置詞之賓辭，以表時與地位之關係：—

We must be ready by *then* (=that time).

(我等其至時須要豫備)

He has worked hard from *then* to *now*.

(他由其時至于今日已勤於勞動)

He walks about from *here* to *there*.

(他由此處行至彼處)

I have heard of worse things being done before *now*.

(余已聞彼甚惡之事自今以前已成矣)

Until *now* it has not ceased raining.

(至今雨猶未息)

Many strange things may happen between *now* and *then*.

(好多奇怪之事，時時發生)

You must go at *once*. This will last for *ever*.

(汝須去一次)

(此是將來永久不滅)

(b) **Phrases as Objects** 句爲賓辭：——或有副詞句(即

前置詞或接續詞而不斷之句，參照 § 30 及 § 267) 可以如單純副詞而用為前置詞之賓辭：—

The day-spring from *on-high* hath* visited us.

(旭光自高照臨我們)

He has come from *beyond-the-seas*. (他從海外來)

He did not return till *about-ten-days-afterwards*.

(他至十日之後都不歸來)

He did not see her till *with-in-a-few-weeks-of-his-death*.

(他于其死之數週間內都不見彼女)

These books are sold at *over-one-rupee each*.

(此等書沽價每本一盧比以上)

I bought this for *under-half-its-value*.

(余是以其價值之半而購此)

(c) **Noun-Clause as Object 名詞節為賓辭：——名詞節**
(參照 § 14) 可以與名詞，或代名詞而用為前置詞之賓辭。

This depends upon | *whether-he-will-consent-or-not*.

(此事待其人之應允不應允而決)

He told every one of | *what-he-had-heard*.

(他對各人盡告其所聞)

Go whenever you like except | *that-you-must-not-go-in-the-rain*. (除汝莫冒雨而去外，汝欲何時去皆可)

273. Omission of Object 賓辭之省略：——省略賓辭
之用法有二：—

省略複牒代名詞。—The man (*whom* 或 *that* 略) we were looking for. (彼人是我所訪)

* hath 第三人稱單數現在時之 have.

省略指示代名詞。—A chair to sit on *it* (略參照 § 236 b).

(坐之椅子)

274. **Forms of Prepositions 前置詞之形**：——前置詞之形分六種，(1) Simple, (2) Double, (3) Compound, (4) Participial, (5) Phrase prepositions, (6) Disguised prepositions.

(1) **Simple prepositions (單純前置詞)**。—At (在), by (被, 由), with (同, 與), on (在上), in (在內), to (及), for (爲, 代), of (之), off (分離), from (從), through (貫通, 透徹), up (上), till (至于, 及), over (越, 過), under (下), after (後)。

備考。—前置詞之“*af-ter*”是“*of*”之比較級, “*ov-er*”是“*up*”之較級 “*un-der*”是古代英語“*un*”之比較級。

(2) **Double prepositions (複副詞)**。—單獨副詞不能表明其意時, 則可用複副詞：—

The dog run *into* the house, (犬走入屋中)

The lamp fell *onto* the table. (洋燈倒墜于桌上)

One man was chosen *from among* the rest.

(一人由餘人中選出)

The seed has sprouted *from under* the ground.

(種子由地下發芽)

The cart stands *over against* the bank.

(馬車向岸而立)

A live coal was taken *from off* the fireplace.

(熾炭由火爐中取出)

He came from *within* the house.

(他由室內來)

(3) **Compound prepositions (混合前置詞)**。—此類是由

前置詞之“*be*” (=by) 或“*a*” (=an), 與名詞, 或形容詞, 或副詞混合而成形:—

Across (on + cross 合成). *Along*.

(橫過)

(沿)

Amidst (on + middle 合成). *Behind* (by + hind).

(中間)

(後)

About (on + by + out 合成). *Above* (on 與 + by + up 合成).

Before (by + fore 合成). *Within*.

Without (在外),

Below (下).

Beneath (by + neath 合成). *Beside* (側).

(下)

Between (by + tween 合成). *Beyond* (by + yonder 合成).

(在兩物之中)

(越)

Amongst (on + gemang 合成). *But* (by + out 合成).

(在多物之中)

(除)

(4) **Participial prepositions** (分詞狀前置詞):—此種原是與述出之名詞或省略之名詞, 而俱用於絕對的之現在分詞或過去分詞也:—

(1) **名詞之述出(參照 § 384,5):—**

Pending fresh orders (新命令發表前). 同於 fresh orders *pending* or yet being given. (新命令制定中或未發表中)

During the summer (夏之間) 同於 the summer *during* or *enduring* or still lasting. (連續或持久或尙存在之夏)

Notwithstanding his anger (不啻彼之怒) 同於 his anger *notwithstanding* or not preventing it. (其怒非抗拒或非碍阻他)

All *except* one (一之外皆是) all, one *being excepted*. (除一之外其餘皆是)

All *save* one (一之外皆是) 同於 all, one *being saved* or *reserved*. (減省或留存一之外餘皆是)

The hour *past* sunset (日沒後之時間) 同於 the hour sunset *having passed*. (日沒既過之時間)

(6) 名詞之省畧：非人稱之絕對辭 (Impersonal Absolute 參照 § 399 備考 2)：—

Considering your age, you have done very well.

(考汝之年齡，汝已甚可爲矣)

Owing to the long drought, the crops have failed.

(久蒙旱魃而收穫已廢矣)

Inform me *concerning*, *touching*, or *regarding* the matter.

(此事之如何關係，乞告我知)

(5) **Phrase Preposition** (句前置詞)：—凡由習慣上所慣用二字或二字以上相合之句，且其句尾仍用單純前置詞者，均可名爲句前置詞，或前置詞句 (Prepositional Phrases 參照 § 30 b)：—

By means of (依於...；爲.....)； because of (因爲...)； in front of (在.....之前)； in opposition to (對於.....)； in spite of (不啻.....)； on account of (因爲.....；.....之故)； with reference to (論及.....；關於.....)； with regard to (關於.....)； for the sake of (因爲.....)； on behalf of (因爲.....)； instead of (.....之代)； in the lieu of (.....之代)； in the place of (...之代)； in prospect of (...之望則...)； with a view to (由.....之點)； in the event of (在.....之際；若.....之

Concerning, *touching*, *regarding* 三字皆關係之意。

事起, 則.....).

備考.—“*on this side*”及“*on board*”兩句, 是不用單純前置於其句尾; 如:—

In this side the river (河之側). *On board* the ship (船之甲板上),

又名詞之“*despite*”可以用為前置詞以代前置詞句之“*in spite of*”:—

Despite his riches, powr, and pelf.—Scott.

(不啻其人之富豪, 權勢及貨財)

(6) **Disguised prepositions** (假體前置詞).—*by* 如何變為“*be*”及 *on* 如何變為 *a* (此似某名詞或形容詞之添尾字之作用), 又 *a* 如何可用為“*on*”以置於動名詞之前之理, 已說明於前矣(參照 § 251). 又如“*four o'clock*”(四時), “*Jack o lantern*”(鬼火)等之“*o*”是皆為“*of*”之代用.

尚有屬於與上文同類者述如左:—

Wheat sells at sixteen seers *a rupee*.

(小麥十六斯亞沽銀一盧羅). Seers 印度之量數.

He called to see me once *a week*.

(他每一個禮拜來訪余一次)

He gave the coolies four annas *a piece*.

(他對於擔夫負一件物而給一安那斯)

上文之“*a*”甚似無定冠詞, 故誤解之者, 常有用有定冠詞之“*the*”於同樣用法而代用“*a*”; 如:—

Wheat sells at sixteen seers *the rupee*

275. 下文所揭者為前置詞之特別用法, 學者最宜注意:—

(a) **At, in.**—“*At*”是關係于空間或時間之一小範圍; “*in*”是關係於其更廣一層之範圍:—

He will start *at* six o'clock *in* the morning.

(他將于朝早六時出發)

The end is *at hand* (=very close).

(其終點是近手)

The work is *in hand* (=in a state of Progress).

(其事業是到手)

(b) **With, by.**—“*With*” 是關於用器械以造作事物; “*by*” 是關於動作者:—

This book was written *by me with* a quill close.

(此書是由余用鵝毛筆寫之也)

(c) **After, in.**—關於過去之空間或時間是宜用 “*after*”; 關於未來之空間或時間則宜用 “*in*.”

He died *after* (=at the close of) a few days. (*Past.*)

(他死了數日之後)

He will die *in* (=at the close of) a few days. (*Future.*)

(他將於數日內而死)

備考.—誤用 “*after*” 於未來之空間或時間者，屢見不一，但此字僅可用於過去之空間或時間耳，故云 “He will die *after* a few days” 則大差矣。

(d) **Between, among.**—“*between*” 是表「界於兩事物」之意味，而 “*among*” 是表「界於兩事物以上」之意味:—

Those two men quarrelled *between* themselves.

(其兩人中互相爭亂)

Those three men quarrelled *among* themselves.

(其三人中互相爭亂)

(e) **Beside, besides.**—“*Beside*” 是有 *by the side of* 「傍側」之意，有時亦有 *outside of* 「之外」之意，而 “*besides*” 則為 *in addition to* 「加之以」之意:—

He came and sat *beside* me (=by my side).

(他來坐於吾之側)

Your answer is *beside* (=outside of, irrelevant to) the question. (汝之答辭是屬於問題之外)

Besides (=in addition to) advising he gave them some money. (彼既與彼等以金錢而加之以忠告)

(f) **By, since, before.**—此三字俱是用爲示時間之點，而非示時之期間(即間隙)：—

You must be back *by* four o'clock.

(汝須要在四點鐘之頃爲來)

He has been here *since* four o'clock.

(他由四點鐘已到此)

He did not get back *before* four o'clock.

(他不在四點鐘以前歸來)

(g) **In, into.**—“*In*” 是表事物在於其內部之位置，或靜止之意，“*into*” 則表事物向於其內部之動作之意：—

The frog is *in* the well. (靜止)

(蛙在井中)

The frog fell *into* the well. (動作)

(蛙墜落井中)

試照下文各空虛之處插入適當之前置詞。

(1) I was brought up — Italy — Rome. (2) The moon rose — twelve o'clock — the night. (3) We knew him — a glance as soon as he came — sight. (4) He lives — Nuddea — the province of Bengal. (5) The boat was tied to the shore — a sailor — a rope. (6) The field was ploughed up — a peasant — a pair of oxen. (7) The work must be done —

twelve o'clock. (8) You must be back — a week from the present time. (9) No one has seen him — Thursday last. (10) I have not seen him — his last birthday. (11) He will not get home — sunset. (12) I shall be ready to start — two three hours. (13) Take care to be back — mid-day. (14) I shall not be back — the end of the week. (15) He has been absent from home — Friday last, and I do not think he will return — the 30th of next month. (16) Let me see you again — an hour's time. (17) I shall have completed my task — to-morrow evening. (18) The train will start — forty minutes from now. (19) I have lived — Allahabad — 1st March. (20) I do not expect that he will be here — a week, and I am certain that he will not be here — sunset to-day.

答案及譯解

- (1)in Italy *at* Rome.
(余長成於意大利之羅馬府)
- (2)at twelve o'clock *in* the night.
(月昇於夜間之十二時)
- (3)*at* a glance.....he came *in* sight.
(我等一見彼之進來時就識他)
- (4)*at* Nuddea *in* the province of Bengal.
(彼往於孟加拉州努打)
- (5)*by* a sailor *with* a rope.
(小艇是由水夫以繩繫於岸)
- (6)*by* a peasant *with* a pair of oxen.
(田是由農夫以一對牡牛犁之而耕)
- (7)*by* Twelve o'clock.

(此工事須限至十二時成之)

- (8)back *in* a week from the present time.
(汝須自現今計起於一週間歸來)
- (9)*since* Thursday last.
(自前之禮拜四以來已無人見彼)
- (10)*since* his last birthday.
(余自於其誕生日以來已不見彼)
- (11)*before* sunset.
(彼將不於日未落以前而抵家)
- (12)*in* two or three hours.
(余就預備於二三時間出發)
- (13)*by* mid-day.
(汝要留心於正午歸來)
- (14)*before* the end of the week.
(余將不於此週間末之前歸來)
- (15)*since* Friday last,.....*before* the 30th of next month.
(彼已於前禮拜五以來不在家矣，余不能逆料其將於來月三十日之前歸家否)
- (16)*in* an hour's time.
(使余再於一時間見汝)
- (17)*by* to-morrow evening.
(余將於明晚完吾工事)
- (18)*in* forty minutes from now.
(瀛車將於自今四十分鐘出發)
- (19)*in* alalhabad *since* 3st March.
(余自三月一日以來已往于亞勒哈巴)
- (20)*within* a week.....*before* sunset.
(余不期其於一週內來此，且余確信彼不於今日日沒之前來此)

276. (a) Cause (原因)或 reason (理由)等意味，宜用 *from, of, through, for, because of, owing to, in consequence* 等字

而表示之：—

He almost died *of* fever. (他幾因熱病而死了)

Of course he will be caught some day.

(一定他將來有一日被捕)

He failed *through* inattention to work.

(他因不用心以至失敗其事業)

He could not speak *for* grief. (他因傷悲而不能發言)

He crops failed *from*, 或 *owing to*, 或 *because of*, 或 *in consequence of*, *the want of* rain. (取穫之廢, 爲雨之缺乏也)

(b) **Effect** (結果). 此意味惟前置詞之 *to* 可以表之, 此外別無他前置詞可以表此意者：—

To our great grief and surprise he was not successful.

(彼之不成功者, 令我等生大悲傷及驚駭)

He wanted his time in idleness *to* his own ruin.

(彼浪費其光陰于怠惰, 是適招其自己之墮落也)

(c) **Possession** (所有). 此意味除其字有領位之字尾外, 其餘可用前置詞之 *of* 以表示之：—

The palace *of* the king (=the king's palace) was pulled down. (王之宮殿已崩壞)

The vote *of* the majority was against your proposal.

(多數之投票, 是反對汝之建議)

試照下文空虛之處插入適當之前置詞：—

(1) He will — necessity hear what you have to say. (2) The house could not finished — lack of funds. (3) She died — sorrow at her great bereavement. (4) He was plucked — the surprise of every one. (5) The owner — this house has

lowered his rent — many other houses being vacant in the neighbourhood. (6) He deserves to be blamed — his idleness. (7) Some medicine at this time will be — his benefit, unless in the meanwhile he dies — this attack of fever. (8) I cannot sleep — thinking of all that I must do. (9) — my great disappointment the house is not yet ready for me to enter.

答案及譯解

- (1) He will *of* necessity hear.....
(余將必聞汝之所欲言)
- (2) The house.....finished *for* (或 *from*) lack of funds.
(彼屋因資金之缺乏而不能落成)
- (3) She died *of* sorrow.....
(彼女因大喪失(父母子女之死或最愛者之被奪)之悲哀而死)
- (4) He was plucked *to* the surprise.
(彼之落第令各人驚駭)
- (5) The owner *of* this house has lower his rent *on account of* (或 *in consequence of*) many other.....
(此屋之領主因有多數空屋在於近隣, 故已低減其屋之賃金)
- (6) He.....blamed *for* his idleness.
(彼因其怠惰而應受責)
- (7) Some.....will be *to* his benefit.....he dies *of* this attack of fever.
(今日有種藥, 彼若非於其間因此熱病而死, 則將有效驗于彼)
- (8) I cannot sleep *for* (或 *from*) thinking.....
(余因熟思余所必要行之事, 故不能睡)
- (9) *To* my great disappointment.....
(其屋尚未落成以備余進伙, 故使余大失望)

277. (a) **Exchange** (交換). 表交換或一物誤于他物之事實意味者則用 “*for*” :—

He gave me ten rupees *for* that box. (交換之意)

(他給余十盧羅換其箱)

The cat was taken *for* a dog in the dark. (誤之意)

(在暗處誤之貓爲犬)

(b) **Substitution** (代用), 表示代用之意味時宜用前置詞句之 “*instead of*,” “*in the place of*,” “*in lieu of*,” 及有時用 “*for*” :—

A pronoun is used *instead of* a noun.

(代名詞者, 是用爲名詞之代用者也)

I will go to prison *in lieu of* paying the fine.

(余將入監以代罰金)

(c) **Conflict** (爭鬪)或 **Apposition** (反對). 表爭鬪或反對之意味宜用 “*with*” 或 “*against*,” 表 Defence (防禦) 之意味宜用 “*for*” :—

You are acting *for* my interests and *against* your own.

(汝爲余謀利益, 而反害汝自己之利益)

He was offended *with* me unjustly.

(他對余爲無理之憤怒)

試照下文之空虛處插入適當之前置詞 :—

(1) He was taken — a traveller. (2) A viceroy is one who rules — a king or queen. (3) Sixteen seers of wheat are sole — a rupee. (4) He led his army — the city: but the inhabitants fought bravely — their homes, and therefore — capturing town he was repulsed. (5) What he said and did was only meant — fun. (6) He was picked up and carried

off — dead. (7) You have grappled bravely — your difficulties. (8) He disputed that point — me. (9) You must take my crop — a cash payment. (10) Grain can be given — rent.

答案及譯解

- (1) He was taken *for* a traveller.
(他是被誤爲旅客)
- (2) A viceroy.....rules *in the place of* (或 *for*) a king or queen.
(副王者代國王或女王而統治其國也)
- (3) Sixteen seers.....sold *for* a rupee.
(十六斯亞麥沽一盧布)
- (4) He led.....army *against* the city.....bravely *for* their homes, and therefore *instead of*.....
(彼率領其軍隊而攻擊彼城，但城之居民爲保護其家室而奮勇戰守故彼不得占領之而反被擊退)
- (5) What he said.....meant *for* fun.
(其所言與所爲者皆戲謔耳)
- (6) He was.....carried off *for* dead.
(他被擄出爲死人而被運去)
- (7) You have Grappled bravely *with* you difficulties.
(汝已百折不回而戰勝汝之艱難矣)
- (8) He disputed that point *with* me.
(他與余爭彼論點)
- (9) You must.....crop *in lieu of* a cash payment.
(汝須取余之收穫以代現金之支付)
- (10) Grain.....given *for* rent.
(穀物可以之爲地租之代)

278. (a) Contrast (對照). 表對照之意味者，宜用 “with,”

“for,” “after,” “notwithstanding,” 及有時 “in spite of,” “despite,” 等句：—

With (或 *in spite of*) all his wealth he is discontented.

(無論盡其所有之貨財, 他都是不滿足)

Fair all his promises he a false man.

(不拘他全是允肯, 他究竟是一僞言者)

After (或 *notwithstanding*) all the advice that he has.

(彼無論受盡忠告之言, 他都是固執其愚)

(b) **Adaptation** (適合) 或 **Agreement** (相應). 表適合或相應之意味者, “after” 或 “to” :—

He was surnamed the just *after* his character.*

(彼取名公正, 是適合其之性質)

This tea is exactly *to* my taste.

(此茶是正適余之口)

(c) **Exception** (例外). 表例外之意味者, 用 “except,” “save” 或 “out” :—

All but (或 *except* 或 *save*) one were successful.

(除一人之外, 其餘皆成功)

(d) **Apposition** (同位). 表同位之觀念者用 “of” :—

The season *of* winter. (冬季)

The city *of* Calcutta. (加爾各答之城)

試照下文空虛之處插入適當之前置詞：—

- (1) He always failed — when he tried. (2) None — the brave deserves the fair. (3) — all appearances he is seriously ill. (4) This picture was painted — a good model. (5) All

* 名實相符之謂。

— three were drowned in that shipwreck. (6) He is still poor — all his labours. (7) I distrust you — all your professions and fair work. (8) You will not convince me — all your endeavours. (9) Your dress is well suited — your figure, and would suit any one — a short man. (10) Let the coat be made — this pattern at a cost — twenty rupees. (11) He was a brute — a man — all that you may say in his praise. (12) There is no large island near India — the island — Ceylon. (13) The city — Patna is in the province — Behar. (14) Such customs are not adapted — the continent — Asia. (15) Men should not attempt to live — ioreign models.

答 案 及 譯 解

- (1) He alway failed *except* when he tried.
(他除竭力之時外, 常是失敗)
- (2) None *but* the brave deserves the fair.
(勇者之外, 無適於佳人之匹偶)
- (3) *To* all.....he is seriously ill.
(觀其情狀, 他是重症)
- (4) This picture was painted *after* a good model.
(此圖畫是摹自善標本而寫成)
- (5) All *but* three were drowned.....
(除三人之外, 餘皆在其難船溺死)
- (6) He is till poor *notwithstanding* (或 *in spite of*) all his labours.
(不拘彼之勤勞, 他仍然是貧)
- (7) I distrust you *notwithstanding* (或 *with*) all.....
(不拘汝明言與甘言, 余究竟不信汝)

- (8) You will not.....*in spite of all*.....
 (不拘汝之勉勵, 汝究竟不使余信服)
- (9) You dress is.....*suitd to your*.....any one *except a short man*.
 (汝之衣裳甚合于汝之儀表, 而除短身之人外, 亦無人不合)
- (10) Let the cost.....*made after this*.....*cast of twenty rupees*.
 (請以二十盧比之代價, 而依此樣本以縫一外套)
- (11) He was a brute *of a man in spite of all that*.....
 (無論汝如何褒彼, 彼究竟是一人面獸心也)
- (12) There is no.....*India except the island of Ceylon*.
 (除錫蘭島之外, 則印度之近處無大島矣)
- (13) The city *of Patna*.....*province of Behar*.
 (華氏城是在比赫省)
- (14) Such customs.....*adapted to the continent of Asia*.
 (如此習慣者, 蓋不適於亞細亞大陸)
- (15) Men should not.....*to live after foreign model*.
 (人不可試摩擬生活於外國風俗)

279. (a) **Material (材料), Quality (性質)或 Content (內容物)**. 表示前述之三意味者, 宜用 “*of*” :—

This house was built *of* unburnt bricks. (材料)

(此屋是以未燒煉之磚而起造的)

A cup *of* water than a glass *of* wine. (內容物)

(一杯水勝過一酒杯酒)

He is a man *of* excellent character. (性質)

(他是俊秀性質之人)

(b) **Valuation (價值)或 rate (定額)**. 表價值或定額之意味者, 宜用 “*at*” :—

He lends out money *at* six per cent.

(他貸出之金六分利息)

(c) **Measure (度量)或 standard (標準)**. 表度量或標

準之意味者，宜用“*by*”：—

Rice is sold *by* the pound;¹ beer *by* the quart.

(米是論磅賣；麥酒是論割賣)

(*d*) **Limit** (界限), **extent** (範圍). 表界限或範圍之意味者，宜用“*to*”或“*upto*”：—

You shall pay me *to* the last farthing².

(汝即此僅餘剩之化令亦要還我)

試照下文空虛之處插入適當之前置詞：—

(1) I prefer a book — travels to one — pictures. (2) This must be done, — any rate or — all risks, or — all hazards, or — all events. (3) He is taller than you — two inches. (4) That portrait is true — the life. (5) He did it as a labour — love, but not as a matter — duty. (6) She wore a wreath — roses. (7) A man continues to improve in mind and body — the age of thirty. (8) Your agreement must be carried out — the very letter. (9) I set all your threats — nought. (10) He is a man — much experience, but you must not judge of him — his words. (11) He fought out the question — the last, and set all their reproofs — defiance.

答案及譯解

(1) I prefer a *book of* travels to one *of* pictures.

(余寧擇旅行記之書，勝於圖畫之書)

2. 英國最小之銅貨一片尼四分之一。

1. beer by the quart = beer is sold
by the quart.

- (2) This must be done *at my rate*, *or at all risk*, *or at all hazard*, *or at all events*. (此事無論如何須要爲之. *at any rate*, 無論如何之意. *at all risk*, *at all hazard*, 雖冒如何危險之意. *at all event*, 不拘何事之意.)
- (3) He is.....you *by two inches*,
(他比汝高二寸)
- (4) That portrait.....*true to the life*.
(彼肖像仍酷似生時)
- (5) He did.....*labour of love*.....*matter of duty*.
(他爲其事, 是發於愛勞力之性質而爲, 而非關於義務之事情而爲)
- (6) She wore a wreath *of roses*.
(彼女着玫瑰之花環)
- (7) A man.....*body up to the age of thirty*.
(人至三十歲時, 其心性與身體可以陸續發達)
- (8) Your agreement.....*to the very better*.
(汝之契約, 須要依文面而履行)
- (9) I set all your threats *at naught*.
(余對於汝之一切脅迫, 毫不介意)
- (10) He is man *of much*.....*of him by his word*.
(他是頗多經驗之人, 但汝切勿以其言而判斷他)
- (11) He fought.....*yesterday to the last*.....*reproofs at defiance*.
(他卒之駁倒此問題, 而且破人人之攻擊)

210. **Subject** (書或言論之題目). 表此意味者, 宜用 “*of*”; “*on*,” “*about*,” “*concerning*,” “*as to*,” “*regarding*,” 及 “*in regarded to*”:-

He spoke well *of* me. (彼關於余之事都講好)

This is a book *on* (或 *about*) proverbs. (此書關於諺語)

(b) **Inference** (推度), **motive** (動機), **source** (起原). 表此三意味者, 宜用 “*from*”:-

From what you tell me, he must be a foolish man. (推度)

(由汝所告余之言推之, 彼是不能不是一愚人)

That was all done *from* ill feeling. (動機).

(彼事是盡因惡感情而生)

He is sprung *from* noble uncestors. (起原).

(他是出於高貴之先祖)

(c) **Direction (方向), Aim (目的).** 表此兩意味者, 宜用 “*at*” 及 “*on*” 或 “*upon*,” 又有時用 “*for*” 及 “*to*”:—

He took his bow and aimed *at* the bird.

(他取其弓覲定鳥而射)

The enemy marched *upon* the town.

(敵人向其市都而進軍)

He started *for* London by the evening train.

(他搭晚瀛車出發向倫敦)

試照下文空虛之處插入適當之前置詞:—

- (1) We must take advice — the matter. (2) He inquired — whether the train would arrive by twelve o'clock. (3) You can see — his manner that he is speaking the truth. (4) What he said, he said — his heart. (5) He missed his aim, and they all laugh — him. (6) You are rather severe — the student. (7) The dog made a violent attack — the stranger. (8) Dirty water comes — a dirty fountain. (9) He shouted — him to come. (10) Look — that beautiful stars. (11) He worked hard — a desire to earn his own living. (12) One man winked — the other. (13) This was his first attempt — English composition. (14) He was sent — an errand of mercy. (15) When do you intened to start — home?

答案及譯解

- (1) We.....advice *on* that matter.
(我等關於彼事件, 不可不有忠告之言)
- (2) He inquired *as to* whether.....
(他詢問關於瀟車是在十二時到着與否)
- (3) You can see *from* his manner.....
(汝可由彼之態度以識其現言之真實)
- (4) What he said he said *from* his heart.
(彼所言是由本心而出)
- (5) He missed *.....all laugh *at* him.
(他失諸正鵠, 是以彼等皆嘲他)
- (6) You are rather severe *on* the student.
(汝對於學生頗嚴勵)
- (7) The dog.....attack *on* the stranger.
(犬對於生客為猛烈之攻擊)
- (8) Dirty water comes *from* a dirty fountain.
(濁水來自濁泉)
- (9) He shouted *to* him to come.
(他叫彼進來)
- (10) Look *at* that beautiful star.
(請看彼美麗之星)
- (11) He worked hard *from* a desire.
(彼由於欲儲己之生活費, 故忍做苦工)
- (12) One man winked *at* the other.
(一人以目注視於他人)
- (13) This.....attempt *at* English composition.
(此是彼之第一次試作英文者)
- (14) He was sent *on* an.....
(他已被遣為慈悲之使)
- (15) When do you.....to start *for* home.
(汝欲於何時出發歸家)

281. (a) 表對於特別點之關係 (reference) 意味者, 宜用 “*of*” 及 “*in*.” 此兩前置詞在於此用法, 是常爲形是容詞所先立:—

Free *of* his money. (他不惜他的金錢)

Pure *in* heart. (心中純潔)

(b) Proportion (比例) 之意味用 “*to*” 以表之, comparison (比較) 之意味用 “*than*” 以表之:—

I will bet four *to* one on his failing.

(關於彼之失敗余肯一賭四)*

No one other *than* a graduate need apply for this post.

(除卒業生之外, 無人希望此地位)

備考.—此前置詞 *than* 之別種用例, 可參看下 § 384 (b).

(c) Occupation (事業). 表此意味可用 “*at*” 或 “*in*” 或 “*about*”:—

He was again caught *at* his old tricks.

(他是因用其故技, 而再被捕)

You may go *about* your business. (免職時無禮之粗言)

(汝可去當汝之職務)

(d) Adjuration (誓約). 表此意味者, 宜用 “*by*”:—

Lars Porsena *of* clusium. (神之名)

By the nine God he swore:—Macaulay.

(Lars porsena *of* clusium, 依于九神而發誓)

試照下文空虛之處插入適當之前置詞:—

(1) He was faithful — deed as well as — word. (2) My son, — whom a better son was never born, has just left col-

* 余賭其必敗, 若所賭不中, 則一分賭四分之意)

lege. (3) He incurred a loss of ten — one through the imprudent bargain. (4) A man dull — understanding and slow — speech, is not likely to prosper. (5) My friend is not only learned — Sanscrit, but versed — modern studies. (6) Swear not at all; neither — heaven, for it is God's throne; nor — earth, for it is God's footstool; nor — thy head, for thou canst not make one hair white or black. (7) What are you —? (8) He is clever — translation. (9) We all play fairly well — cricket. (10) He is always engaged — business. (11) A man should always be employed — something, and should not be sparing — labour in anything that he undertakes. (12) Although he was short — money and timid — disposition, yet by dint of perseverance he conquered.

答案及譯解

- (1) He was faithful ~~in~~ deed.....as *in* word.
(彼行爲之誠實, 適如其言)
- (2) My son *than* whom.....
(吾兒正離學校(高等專門學校), 然求一勝於彼之更好男兒, 則未之有也)
- (3) He incurred.....ten *to* one through.....
(因他爲輕率之交易, 故招十倍之損耗)
- (4) A man dull *of* understanding and slow *of* speech.....
(理解鈍而辨論拙之人, 則聞達之望少)
- (5) My friend.....learned *in* Sanskrit, but versed *in* modern studies.
(吾友不僅長於梵語, 即近世之諸學問亦通曉焉)
- (6) Swear.....all; neither *by* heaven, for.....throne; nor *by* earth, for
.....foolstool; nor *by*.....head, for.....

(莫指一切之物而誓之；既不可指天而誓，因天爲神之座位也；又不可指地而誓，因地爲神之踏足凳也，更不可指汝之頭而誓，因汝不能使一髮之爲白或爲黑也)

(7) What are you *about* ?

(汝從事於何)

(8) He is clever *at* translation.

(他是巧于翻譯)

(9) We all.....well *at* cricket.

(我等演 cricket 打球之術皆精善)

(10) He is.....engaged *in* business.

(彼常從事於事業)

(11) A man.....employ *in* something, and.....*paring of* labour.

(人不可不常從事于辦事，又不可于著手其事時而愛惜勞力)

(12) Although.....short *of* money and timid *of* disposition.

(彼雖金錢缺乏性質怯懦，但因有忍耐之力，故彼得以勝利)

232. Preparation (準備). 表示豫備而對待一豫期之事件意味者，宜用 “*against*”：—

She made the house ready *against* his arrival.

(彼女豫備房舍以候彼之駕臨)

(b) **Partition (分離).** 即記述由一全体中分別出之部分也。表示此意味者，宜用 “*of*”：—

You *of* all men ought not to have acted thus.

(諸人中之汝，不應如此行爲)

(c) **Distinction (區別).** 表示由他人或他物區別出之人物之意味者，宜用 “*from*”：—

He scarcely knows one colour *from* another.

(彼於一色與他色之相異處，是罕識別之)

(d) **Separation (離隔).** 表一事物在他事物之外，或與

他事物相離之事實者，有時用 “*from*,” “*by*” 或 “*off*,” 及有時用 “*out of*”:—

He is *from* home. (他是不在其家)

He was within an inch *of* being drowned.

(他僅失慎一寸以內耳，乃竟至于溺死)

He was thrown *off* his house.

(他由其馬跌落)

He worked in season and *out of* season.

(他於時期之內及時期以外都勞動)

試照下文空虛之處插入適當之前置詞:—

- (1) He saved all the money he could spare — the evil day.
 (2) A few men — the host were slain. (3) A blind man cannot tell black — white or light darkness. (4) Get all the men together — the arrival of the chief. (5) I should not have known him — his brother. (6) He inherited a third — the estate. (7) He is something a scholar. (8) He never knows a friend — an enemy. (9) Many — the wounded did not recover. (10) That city is forty miles — here. (11) We are now within three miles — the house. (12) The man seems to be — his head. (13) He is — debt. (14) Calcutta is not very far — the sea. (15) He was acquitted — that charge. (16) We are — duty to-day, but shall be on duty again to-morrow. (17) The school is — order. (18) The flute is — tune. (19) He broke himself that habit. (20) Can you cure me — this disease?

答案及譯解

- (1) He saved.....spare *again* the evil day.
(他能節用而貯藏其一切之金錢以備不測之日)
- (2) A few men *of* the host.....
(軍中少數之人被殺)
- (3) A blind man.....black *from* white or light *from* darkness.
(盲人不能由白以別黑或由暗以別明)
- (4) Get all.....together *against* the arrival.....
(糾集各兵士, 以準備首領之駕臨)
- (5) I should.....him *from* his brother.
(余不應由其兄弟以判斷彼)
- (6) He inherited a third *of* the estate.
(他承繼遺產之三分一)
- (7) He is something *of* a scholar.
(他稍有學者之風)
- (8) He never knows a friend *from* an enemy,
(他總不判別同志與讐敵)
- (9) Many *of* the wounded.....
(多數之負傷者尚未快復)
- (10) That city is forty miles *from* here.
(彼市離此處四十米)
- (11) We are.....miles *of* the house.
(我等今在彼屋三米以內)
- (12) The man.....be *off* his head.
(彼人似有狂氣)
- (13) He is *in* debt.
(他負債)
- (14) Calcutta.....far *from* the sea.
(加爾各搭距海不遠)
- (15) He was acquitted *of* that charge.

(他被免除其責任)

(16) We are *off duty* to-day, but.....

(我等今日雖離其義務,但至明日又再服義務矣)

(17) The school is *out of order*.

(彼學校有紊亂之狀)

(18) The flute is *out of tune*.

(此笛之音調不諧)

(19) He broke himself *of that habit*.

(彼已捨棄其自己之習癖)

(20) Can you.....me *of this disease*?

(汝能治余此病乎)

283. (a) Superiority (優等)之意味者,宜用 "*above*," 表 inferiority (劣等)或 unworthiness (無價值)之意味者宜用 "*beneath*":—

He is *above* (superior to) such a mean act.

(他在此卑劣行為之上)

His conduct is *beneath* contempt (not worthy even of being despised). (他的行為在輕蔑之下)

(b) 表 Authority (權勢)之意味者,宜用 "*over*," 表 subjection (屬從)之意味者,宜用 "*under*":—

God is Lord *over* all. (神為萬物主宰)

Under whose authority was that done.

(在其權下之事皆成矣)

試照下文空虛之處插入適當之前置詞:—

- (1) The conduct of such an honourable man is — suspicion.
 (2) Such work is — person of my poor abilities. (3) Man is — the angels. (4) The British army — havelock marched into Lucknow. (5) The general placed — the army is a man

of long experience. (6) His words are so false that they are — notice. (7) A man should not marry a wife — him. (8) Since you have been placed — me, I must obey. (9) He was transferred — the orders of his superior. (10) He quite — your thumb.

答 案 及 譯 解

- (1) The conduct of.....is *above* suspicion.
(有名譽人之行爲, 是不招猜疑)
- (2) Such work is *above* (或 *beyond*) a person of my poor abilities.
(如此事務非余之庸才所可及也)
- (3) Man is *below* the angels
(人在天使之下)
- (4) The British army *under* havelock.....
(哈佛樂率領之英軍, 已侵入留克漢)
- (5) The general placed *over* the army.....
(率領此軍之大將, 是久有經驗之人)
- (6) His words.....are *beneath* notice.*
(其言如此虛偽, 則不用注意)
- (7) A man should.....wife *beneath* him.
(人不可娶劣於己之妻)
- (8) Since you.....placed *over* me.....
(汝既位置高於余, 故不能不服從汝)
- (9) He was transferred *under* the.....
(彼依其上官之命而轉任)
- (10) He is quite *under* your thumb.
(他是十分如汝意)

* they 是 word 之代名詞。

284. (a) 前置詞 *with* 之用處，有左舉之數種：一

(1) **Against** (反對) 之意；如：一

One king fought *with* another. (一王與他王戰)

He is angry *with* me. (他怒余)

Why do you quarrel *with* me? (汝何故與余爭)

I must not dispute the point *with* you. (余必不與汝爭此論點)

He grappled bravely *with* his evil star.

(他與其惡運勇爭)

(2) **Companionship** (同伴) 或 **union** (結合) 之意
如：一

He came *with* his dog, but without this horse.

(他同其犬來，但不同其馬)

With or without help we shall succeed.

(助與不助，我等亦就成功矣)

I will go *with* you. (余將同汝去)

I made a contract *with* him. (余將同汝結契約)

(3) **Apart from** (分離) 之意；如：一

I differ *with* you. (余與汝所見不同)

I have parted *with* my horse. (余與余之馬別)

I *withdrew* (撤回或取消) that remark. (余取消其說)

He *withheld* (截止或防止) his hand. (他挽止其手)

(4) **Instrument** (器械). 參照前例之 § 275 (b).

(b) **Than**—此字固是接續詞 (參照 § 291 g), 但用在左揭之諸例中，則成爲前置詞：一

賓辭之種類

- I will not take less than *rupees*..... }
 (余將不取十盧鄙以下) } 名詞賓辭
- No one other than *a graduate* need apply... }
 (卒業生以外皆不用) }
- My son, than *whom* a better dose not excist, is here.. ...
 複牒代名詞賓辭. (吾子在於此處, 然優等于彼者已不存在矣)
- He got more than *what he asked for*..... 名詞節賓辭
 (他所得者多過其所求)
- He did nothing else than *laugh*..... 名詞無定法賓辭
 (他於笑之外而無所事事)

Chapter VIII. 第八編

CONJUNCTIONS. 接續詞

285. 接續詞, 惟用於結合之目的, 此外別無他用:—
 接續詞絕不似前置詞至或連結賓辭.
 接續詞不似副詞至有形容他語.
 接續詞單用于連結此語與彼語或此文與彼文耳.
 因有上之理由, 故有同一字, 而在彼則為副詞, 在此則為前置詞, 又或在彼則接續詞:—

I have seen this man *before*. (副詞)

(余前曾見此人)

He stood *before* the door. (前置詞)

(他立于門前)

The rain fell *before* we reached home. (接續詞)

(我等未抵家以前而雨降)

286. 接續詞大別爲兩種；如：—

I. **Co-ordinative** (同位接續詞). 同位接續者何，以其結合同位之文也。

II. **Subordinative** (從位接續詞). 從位接續詞者何，以其結合從位之文(即屬文)於主文(即上位之文)也。

§ I 章一.—CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

同位接續詞

287. 文而以同位(即相當equal)名者，蓋斷定其文之皆各自獨立，而絕不有互相關係之事實也。

288. 同位之數文，可以結合之爲一文者，厥有四種方法。以是之故，而同位接續詞遂生出四種類：—

(a) **Cumulative** (堆疊接續詞) 屬於此種接續詞者，蓋單加一記述或一事實于他事實也。

(b) **Alternative** (選擇接續詞). 屬於此種接續詞者，蓋於一記述與他記述之間，而選擇之也。

(c) **Adversative** (對照接續詞). 屬於此種接續詞者，蓋以一記述或事實，而與他記述或事實相對照或對峙也。

(d) **Illative** (推度接續詞). 屬於此種接續詞者，蓋由他之記述或事實，以推斷其一記述或事實也。

(a) **CUMULATIVE** (Addition).

堆疊接續詞

And—The one received a prize, *and* the other was promoted.

(一人受賞，他人昇位)

Both...and—He was *both* degraded *and* expelled.

(他被黜兼被放逐)

Also—He is guilty, and you *also*.

(他有罪, 汝亦有罪)

Too—He is a idler, and a gambler *too*.

(他是一懶惰者, 及賭博者)

as well as—He *as well as* you is guilty.

(他與汝同有罪)

No less than—He *no less than* you is guilty.

(他與汝之罪無異)

Not only...but also—He was *not only* accused, *but also* convicted. (彼人不但被告發有嫌疑, 更被宣告為有罪)

Now—They preferred Barabbas to Jesus; *now*, Barabbas was a robber.* (彼等比巴憐比於基督, 但巴憐比原是一盜竊)

Well—You have done the work very skilfully; *well*, I did not expect it of you.

(汝已成此工夫如此其精巧矣, 甚好, 汝能如此原非余之所料及也)

(b) ALTERNATIVE (Choice).

選擇接續詞

Either...or—*Either* this man sinned *or* his parents.

(非此人犯罪, 即其兩親犯罪)

Neither...nor—He was *neither* an idler *nor* a gambler.

(他既非懶惰者, 又非賭博者)

Otherwise, else or—Leave the room, *or* you will be caught.

(離去此房子是好, 不然, 汝將被捕)

* 輕善而重惡之意。

(c) ADVERSATIVE (Contrast).

對照接續詞

But—He is sad, *but* hopeful. (他雖是悲愁, 但尚有可冀)

Still, yet—He is very rich, *still* or yet he is not contented.

(他雖是甚富, 但尚未滿足)

Nevertheless—All men were against him; *nevertheless* he persevered. (雖則人皆反對他, 但他仍是忍耐)

However—All men were against him; he stuck, *however* to his point. (雖則人皆反對他, 但他仍固守其論點)

Whereas, while—Wise man love truth; *whereas* or *while* fools shun it. (賢者愛其理, 但愚人避之)

Only—Go where you like; *only* do not stay here.

(隨汝欲去何處都不拘, 但莫止于此處)

(d) ILLATIVE¹ (Inference).

推度接續詞

Therefore—He was found guilty, and *therefore* he was hanged. (他已審明有罪, 所以他被處絞刑)

Then, so, so then—It is time to go; *so* or *so then* let us start, or let us start *then*. (今是出行之時, 故我等可以出發)

For—He will die some day; *for* all men are mortal.

(他必有死之一日, 因凡人無有不死者也)

¹ Mason 先將此種接續詞歸入副詞, 且謂其非接續詞云, 然觀余所引之例證, 當能識別其確為接續詞, 且此是依文法大家 Bain 氏之說, 彼將此等語歸入接續詞也. 要之此等語確有聯絡兩文為一之意義而無疑. 而 “because” 是為從位接續詞, 與同位接續詞之 “therefore” 正為相應.

289. 堆疊接續詞，如左舉諸特別用法，學者不可不注意：—

(a) *Both...and*. 一凡排列兩句或兩文，而不必使之有畸輕畸重之分者，可用此一對接續詞以連結之：—

(1) He is *both* fool *and* a knave. 此是結合“fool”與“knave”兩語也，其意為“He is not a fool only, not a knave only, but both at once.”

(他不僅是蠢漢，又不僅是惡漢，蓋蠢漢與惡漢兼備也)

(2) He was *both* degraded from his class *and* punished with a heavy fine.

(此是結兩文，“其意為他既被黜職又被重罰”)

(b) *As well as, no less than*. (此為接續詞句，參照 § 30, e). 此兩句接續詞，其用時有一句或一文，而加添于他句或他文時，即能使其兩句或兩文中之最首者，偏生強意義。*

(1) He *as well as* you is guilty (=He is guilty *as well as* you are guilty) (他與汝同為有罪)

(2) He *no less than* you is guilty (=He is guilty *no less than* you are guilty. (彼之罪不減于汝之罪)

(2) *Not only...but* 或 *but also*. —此兩句接續詞，若其用時有一句或一文，而加添於他句或他文時，即能令其兩句或兩文中之第二者，偏生強意義：—

(1) *Not only* I, *but* all other men declare this to be true.

(不獨余，凡人皆公言此為真也)

(2) That man was *not only* accused of the crime, *but also* convicted of it by the magistrate.

* (b) 項之接續詞，在 Bain 氏將其歸入同位接續詞。余更襲用其例文。蓋因其足以便於與 (c) 項之接續詞比較也。但“as”與“than,”其實際為從位接續詞。故呼“as well as”及“no less than”兩句為從位接續詞更為正確。

(彼人不獨被告發其罪, 更被官吏判斷其罪矣)

(d) **Now.**——此接續詞(不可混于時之副詞之“Now”), 是於欲解明前文(非單爲連絡被此之文)而因之更導入新文時用之:—

And Pilate said unto them, “will ye have this man or Barabbas?” They answered, not this man, but Barabbas.” *Now* Barabbas was a robber.

—*New Testament.*

(而法官鄙列對彼等而言曰, “汝等欲釋此人乎, 抑欲釋巴憐比乎, 彼等僉對曰, 不是此人, 巴憐比耳. 但巴憐比原是一盜也)

(e) **Well.**——此字(此指用於接續詞, 非指用於副詞時). 是用爲導入新文, 以表其有感於前文所言之事, 而爲滿足, 痛悔, 驚愕及其他之感情:—

You have finished the work that was given you;—*well* you have done a good deal better than you usually do, and I am much pleased with your improvement.

(汝已做完汝之工課乎;—甚好, 汝今比於平常所做好得多, 余亦甚喜歡汝之有進步)

試照下文有一畫記號如 — 之處, 插入同位接續詞:—

1. Hear the opinions of other men, — form thine own judgment.
2. He was not surpassed — by you — any one else.
3. We have — heard — read about that matter; — we are in total ignorance, and unable to form an opinion about it.
4. We see poverty on all sides, — discontent nowhere.
5. He blamed them for their rashness, — relieved their wants.

6. The flowers have come out before their season; — I have never seen such a thing before.
7. They were defeated indeed — not disgraced.
8. He came upon me very suddenly; — I had no time to run off — hide.
9. You are not a man to quarrel; — we had better come to terms.
10. Glamis hath murdered sleep; — he shall sleep no more.
11. The approach of the horsemen was now beyond doubt — a cloud of dust was seen in the distance, — a tramping of horses' feet was distinctly heard.
12. In the discharge of his duty he was a strict — just man.
13. The sound of a gun near at hand startled — my horse — myself.
14. Stone walls do not make a prison, — iron bars a cage.
15. The rain comes — goes in slight showers; — the heavy rains have not yet set in.
16. My own house — yours is built of good lime — burnt brick; — it will not crumble to pieces sooner than yours.
17. He has given each of you a sum of money; — he has left you all his books — all his gardens.
18. Julius Cæsar was murdered in Rome by a gang of

conspirators; — Julius Cæsar was the first of the Roman Emperors.

19. He fell suddenly down in a fainting fit: several persons rushed forward to support him; — they were too late.

20. He has run away with all the money entrusted to him; — what steps shall we take? Shall we search for him ourselves, — shall we employ the police?

21. Civil war have been usually marked — by the fierceness — by the stubborn pertinacity of the contending parties.

22. Heaven and earth may pass away; — my words shall never pass away.

23. My son last term was — idle — in bad health; — he was not promoted at the end of the term.

24. He paid off his debt in time; — he would certainly have been imprisoned for debt.

25. He declared he would never forsake his post; — he fled away at the first sign of danger.

26. Prince Azgid was good-natured, handsome, and clever; — he was rather a timid disposition.

27. This poor man must be off his head; — he laughs at one time and weeps at another.

28. The temple stands in the middle of a fine masonry tank, — a marble bridge leads up to it: — this temple was built by an ancient Hindu Raja.

29. Do not take any part — in his amusements — his plots; — you will get into trouble by being seen in his company.

30. They were determined to obtain his consent — by flattery, — by force, — by persuasion; — they never succeeded after all.

31. My father made me go to school regularly every day; — I should not now be so successful in life as I am.

32. He was so shocked at the sad news that he — spoke — wept, — went away in silence — was not seen again that day.

33. I hope you will remember to be just — generous to those who are dependent on you.

34. I must speak out; — I shall blame myself ever afterwards.

35. He is a worthless fellow, possessed — of ability — industry — honesty — common sense; — what sort of punishment can be inflicted on such a creature?

36. Give thine ear to every man, — thy voice to few.

答案及譯解

(1) Hear.....men, *but* form.....

〔他人之意見固宜聽之，但必要成于自己之判斷〕

(2) He was not surpassed *either* by you *or* any one else.

〔彼固不爲汝所勝，亦不爲別人所勝〕

(3) We have *neither* heard *nor* read.....matter; *and* so we are.....

(我等關於該事件，既不之聞，又不之讀，故全然暗於其事，是以對之雖欲發一意見亦不能矣)

- (4) We see.....all sides, *but* discontent nowhere.
(我等固見困窮滿四方，然到處亦未見有不足者)
- (5) He blame.....rashness, *but* relieved.....
(彼責彼等之無謀，雖然，寔救其缺乏耳)
- (6) The flowers.....season; *well* I have.....
(彼花已先于其季節而開矣；甚好，此寔余前此所未嘗見過者也)
- (7) They were.....indeed, *but* not disgraced.
(彼等寔失敗矣，然不受恥辱)
- (8) He came upon.....suddenly; *so* I had.....off *and* hid.
(他突然來襲余，故余不暇逃去而隱匿)
- (9) You are.....quarrel; *so* we had.....
(汝非爭亂之人；故我等宜相與和睦)
- (10) Glamis hath.....sleep; *and therefore* he shall.....
(Glamis 已中絕其寢；故不為再寢矣)
- (11) The approach.....doubt; *for* a cloud.....distance, *and* trampling of...
(騎兵之迫近，今已無可疑矣；何也蓋塵埃之雲起已見於遠，而且憂憂馬蹄之聲，已分明聞之也)
- (12) In the discharge.....a strict *but* just man.
(彼雖峻嚴以盡其義務，然正直人也)
- (13) The sound of.....startled *both* my horse *and* myself.
(起於近處之砲聲，余之馬與余皆受驚)
- (14) Stone walls.....prison, *nor* iron bars cage.
(石壁不造牢獄，鐵棒不造獸欄)
- (15) The rain comes *and* goes in slight showers; *for* the heavy.....
(小雨來而復去者；因大雨尚未降故也)
- (16) My own house *as well as* yours.....lime *and* burnt brick; *and therefore* it will.....
(余之屋與汝之屋，同是以上等之石灰及煉磚築成；故其必不比汝之屋而獨早崩壞)

- (17) He has given.....money; *moreover* he has...books *and* all his gardens.
 (彼既與汝各若干之金錢矣；而且遺汝以其一切之書及一切之花園)
- (18) Julius Cæsar was.....conspirators; *now* Julius Cæsar.....
 (入略斯撒宜雖在羅馬被殺于一群之叛徒；然究竟其爲羅馬最先之帝王也)
- (19) He fell suddenly.....to support him; *but* they were too late,
 (他起暈眩而俄然昏倒；有數人走前欲支持他；然已太晚矣)
- (20) He has run.....him; *now* what.....me take? Shall.....ourselves, *or* shall.....
 (他並挾其一切之委托金而逃走矣；然則我等將取何方針以對待之乎，我等將搜索其身乎，抑備請警察官乎)
- (21) Civil warsmaked *not only* by the fierceness *but* by the stubborn.....
 (內亂之起，常不僅由於黨派之激烈，而尙由於頑固之固執)
- (22) Heaven and earth.....away; *but* my words shall.....
 (天長地久有時盡，但吾言永久不磨滅)
- (23) My son.....was *not only* idle *but also* in bad health; *and therefore* he was.....
 (吾兒於前學期不第懶怠，而且欠健康；故於學期之末不得昇級)
- (24) He paid.....in time; *otherwise* he would.....
 (他已依期還其債矣；不然，則必因負債而被禁錮)
- (25) He declared.....his post; *yet* (或 *nevertheless*) he fled.....
 (他聲明決不捨已所守之地；然僅經第一次之危難，而彼已逃矣)
- (26) Prince Azgid.....and clever, *only* he was.....
 (亞渣質公性善良，容姿美，且敏捷於事物，惟其性質稍怯懦耳)
- (27) This poor man.....his head; *for* he laughs.....
 (此衰頹人一定是發狂；因其忽而笑，忽而泣也)
- (28) The temple...masonry tank, *and* a marble.....to it *now* this temple...
 (其寺建於美麗石池中，而且有一大理石之橋以通之；然此寺是由古代印度人拉查所築也)
- (29) Do not.....part *either* in his amusements *or* his plots; *for* you will.....

(莫加入彼之遊戲與彼之謀計；因被其朋黨所見，汝將為煩雜所逼也)

- (30) They were.....his consent *either* by flattery, *or* by force, *or* by persuasion; *yet* they.....

(彼等已決定用阿諛，強制，勸誘，而求得彼之同意；然究竟全不成功)

- (31) My father.....every day; *otherwise* I should.....

(余父使余每日依規則上學；不然，余無今日之成功矣)

- (32) He was so.....that he *neither* spoke *nor* weep, *but* went.....silence *and* was not.....

(彼接此悲報而大受激動，因之其不言亦不泣，惟默然而退，且異日亦不再見彼)

- (33) I hope.....be just *as well as* generous.....

(余望汝對於屬從於汝之人，其公正宜如其寬大)

- (34) I must speak out, *or* I shall.....

(余須要今茲說明；不然，余將有後悔)

- (35) He is.....fellow, possessed *neither* of ability *nor* industry *nor* honesty *nor* common sense; *now* what sort.....

(彼既無才能，又不勤勉，更不忠實，復無常識；寔無價值之奴才也；然則宜用何種刑罰以加於此動物乎)

- (36) Give thine.....man, *but* thy voice to few.

(各人所言，宜以汝之耳聽之，但不可洩擊于人多時。= 多聞寡言之意)

§ 2 章二.—SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

從位接續詞

290. 凡一文而必屬從於他文然後成意義，而自已不能自完全其意義者，謂之他文之從位也。

屬文者 (Dependent sentence)，其從位接續詞先彼而立之文也。

主文者 (Principals sentence), 從位或下位之文, 所被屬從之文也。

主文	接續詞	屬文
I will read that book,	if	you advise me.
(汝若勸余, 余將讀其書)		

291. 一文而可使之屬從於他文之方法, 其重要約分爲九種:—

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (a) Apposition (同位) | (b) Causation (原因) |
| (b) Effect (結果) | (d) Purpose (目的) |
| (e) Condition (假定) | (f) Concession or Contrast
(讓步或對照) |
| (g) Comparison (比較) | (h) Extent or Manner
(範圍或方法) |

(i) Time (時)

(a) Apposition¹(同位).(此一法爲屬從法中之最簡單者)

主文	屬文
He told us (<i>the fact</i>),	<i>that</i> rain had fallen.
(他告余知, 雨已降雨)	

吾等若究 *that* 字之字源, 彼屬舉是一中性指示代名詞也, 今變成接續詞於此, 蓋自 Mason 先生始, 先生所著之英文法 122 頁, 論及字變成接續詞之理由如左:—

“*That* 原是中性代名詞, 用爲指示前文或前句之事實也, 如 “It was good; he saw *that*.” 若將此文之態倒變之, 則爲——“He saw *that* (即) it was good.” 於是首節變爲次節, 或從位, 而 “*that*” 亦變爲從位接續詞。”

“Mason 名此 *that* 爲簡單從位接續詞” (Simple apposition conjunction), 但此名稱比 “同位” 之名稱, 字數太多, 音調太劣, 故吾改用今名, Mason 解爲接續詞 *that* 即爲 *namely* (即) 之意義, 其効力亦相等云。

Abbott 博士所著之 “解剖法,” 其 257 頁亦名此 *that* 爲 “同位。”

He wrote to us (*to the effect*), *that* he had arrived safely.

(他付信于我, 謂彼已平安到着)

He made a promise, *that* he would return soon.

(他已允肯, 謂其將早回來)

上所舉諸例之屬從文, 是與括弧中之名詞同位, 此名詞有逸出之者, 亦有省畧之者.

(b) Cause (原因)或 Reason (理由):—

主文

屬文

He will succeed,

because he has worked hard.

(他將成功, 因他非常勞働也)

I will do this,

since you desire it.

(余將爲此, 因汝所願之也)

Let us go to bed,

as it is now late.

(我等就寢罷, 因現在不早了)

(c) Effect (結果):—

主文

屬文

He talked so much,

that he made himself hoarse.

(他講如是其多, 徒令其自己枯聲耳)

(d) Purpose (目的):—

主文

屬文

Men work,

that they may earn a living.

(人因勞働, 如此彼可以儲其生活費)

He took medicine,

in order that he might recover

(他依次序食藥, 如此其可以革病)

He took medicine,

so that he might recover.

He walked with a cane,

lest he should stumble.

(他携杖而行, 如此可以不至墮地)

(e) Condition (假定):—

主文	屬文
I will do this,	<i>I am allowed.</i> (若余允此, 余將行之)
They threatened to beat him, <i>unless</i> he confessed (=if he did not confess). (他若不自白, 彼等將以打而脅迫他)	
I agree to these terms, <i>provided or provided that</i> you will sign your name. (汝若署汝之名, 余將表同情於此條約)	
He gave a sudden start, <i>as if</i> he had been shot (=as he would have done, if he had been shot). (他忽然躍起, 恰如若被槍所擊然)	
You must leave the room, <i>whether</i> you wish it or <i>no</i> (=you must leave the room under any condition whatever). (汝願與不願, 汝要離去此室)	

(f). Concession 或 Contrast (讓步或對照):—

主文	屬文
He is an honest man,	<i>though (或 although)</i> he is poor. (他雖則是窮, 但是一忠實人)
He will never succeed,	<i>however</i> much he may try. (他雖則為多次試驗, 但他將總不成功)
He was not contented,	<i>however</i> rich he become. (他雖則變成富, 但他未以為滿足)
He was not refreshed, (他雖則長睡, 然不回復元氣)	<i>notwithstanding that</i> he slept long.

備考. 一此接續詞 “however” 用于同位接續詞時, 是自己獨立, 且常置於其文中畧之中間. 但其用於從位接續詞時, 彼必附着於如 “much” 等之副詞, 或 “rich” 等之形容

詞。且常置在其文之首：—

- | 屬文 | 主文 |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Though</i> he punish me, | <i>yét</i> will I trust in him.
(雖則他罰余, 但余尙信賴他) |
| 2. Hot <i>as</i> the sun is, | we must go out.
(太陽雖則熱, 但我須要出外) |

學者宜注意於“as”之用於讓步或對照時, 其不易爲形容詞或副詞或分詞所先立。而此先立辭, 蓋恰似續於動詞後之完成詞同一作用：—

Hot as the sun is = however hot the sun is.

(g) Comparison (比較)：—(1) 同等程度之比較：—

同性質之比較

He is as clever as I (am 略).

(他之聰明如余一樣)

He likes you as much as I (like you 略).

(他好汝, 如余好汝一樣)

He likes you no less than me (=he likes me 略).

(他好汝, 無異於他好余)

The sea is as deep as the mountains are high.

(海之深, 等於山之高)

異性質之比較

He is as good as he is wise (=He is no less good than he is wise). (他之善良, 不讓乎他之賢明)

(2) 不等程度之比較：—

同性質之比較

He is more (或 less) clever than I (am) 略).

(他更聰明過我)

He likes you more (或 less) *than* I (likes you 略).

(他之好汝勝過余之好汝)

He likes you more (或 less) *than* me (=he likes me).

(他好汝勝過好我)

異性質之比較

The sea is deeper *than* the mountains are high.

(海之深過於山之高)

He is more wise *than* (he is) good.

(他之賢明更過於他之善良)

He is less good *than* (he is) wise.

(他之善良不及他之賢明)

但“*than*”如用于 § 284 (b) 之例時，則爲前置詞，而非
接續詞。

(h) **Extent (範圍)或 Manner (方法):—**

主文

屬文

Men will reap. *as* they sow. (播種所及之範圍或方

法) (人既播種，則將有收穫)

This is not true, *so far as* I can find out.

(照余所見，此是爲不真)

He chose the men, *according as* they* were strong

or weak. (彼之選人，依其強弱上選之)

屬文

主文

As men saw, *so* will they also reap.

(i) **Time (時):—**

* They 是 men 之代名詞。

Time Simultaneous. 同時

主文

屬文

He called at the house, *as* the clock struck four.

(時計打四下之間, 他來探望於此家)

I will leave the room, *as soon as* you open the door.

(照汝幾早開門, 余將退出此室)

You can hold the horse, *while* I bring the saddle.

(余携來馬鞍時, 汝即能保持此馬)

Time Before. 前之時

主文

屬文

He worked very hard, *before* he succeeded.

(他未成功之前, 他已勞動甚苦)

You have much to do, *ere* you can gain your end.

(汝於達汝之目的以前, 已爲了好多事)

He remained a minor *until* he was seventeen years old.

(他達十七歲, 而尙爲未成年者)

Time After. 後之時

主文

屬文

He returned home, *after* he had done the work.

(他既成其工事後, 遂即歸家)

He has been very weak, *since* he was taken sick.

(他既染病後遂甚衰弱)

Time How Long. 永久之時

主文

屬文

The sun will rise, *while* the world lasts.

(世界不滅之時, 即有太陽之昇)

No one can harm us, *so long as* we remain friends.

(吾人朋友之間, 何人不能害我們)

Relative and Interrogative Adverbs.

複牒副詞與疑問副詞

292. 複牒副詞, 是由接續詞與副詞相合爲一之複詞類, 此說已於 § 18 詳解之矣. 而疑問副詞用於接續詞時, 實亦與之無殊:—

Let me ask you *how* you did this.

(待余問一問汝如何爲此)

複牒副詞與疑問副詞之間, 其形不稍差異. 但前者(複牒副詞)爲主文, 其形容之名詞有述出者亦有省略者. 後者(疑問副詞)必有疑問意義之動詞置於句前, 此其差異之點也.*

複牒副詞及疑問副詞, 由其結合文章之作用上觀之, 蓋爲構成一種特別之從位接續詞.

Time. 時

主文

屬文

He remained silent, *when* (=as soon as) he heard that.

(他聞其事時仍是緘默)

He feels sad, *whenever* (=at any time in which)

he thinks of lost friend. (他憶起其亡友時就覺悲哀)

My friends inquired, *when* I should return.

(余何時歸來吾諸友就來過訪)

* 參照 § 260.

Coneession (護步), 或 Contrast (對照)

主文

屬文

He sold that house, *when* (=although) it was the best
he had. (他雖有間極好屋時亦都賣之)

Purpose (目的), Cause (原因), 或 Reason (理由)

主文

屬文

We never understood, *why* (=the reason for which) he
act so. (吾人不知他爲何如此行事)

Place (地位)

主文

屬文

We find flower, *where* (=in a place in which)
we expected only weeds. (吾等於所期望雜草之處乃發見花來)

We find flowers, *whenever* (=in any places in
which) we wander. (吾等於所遊蕩之處, 乃發見花)

He did not tell us, *whence* (=the place from which)
he had come. (他不告吾等知他是由何處來)

Respect (關係)

主文

屬文

He did not tell us, *where* (=in what point) we were
wrong. (他不告我等所差誤之處)

We cannot perceive *where* (=in what respect) the
difference lies. (吾等不能知覺其差異之點在何處)

Manner (方法), 或 Mean (手段)

主文

屬文

Let me ask you, *how* (=by what means or in what manner) you did this. (譯解見前)

State (狀態), 或 Condition (情形)

主文

屬文

Let me ask you, *how* (=in what state of health) you are to-day. (待余問一問汝今日之情形何如)

Doubt (懷疑)

主文

屬文

He wished to know *whether* (或 if) he was ready to start. (他欲知彼是預備出發與否)

備考。—複牒副詞，常時能代複牒代名詞，如左揭諸例是也：—

- { Ten o'clock is the hour *when* we must start.
(十時是為吾等須要出發之時)
- { Ten o'clock is the hour *at which* we must start.
- { Tell me the reason *why* you left us.
(汝以其理由告余知為何汝離去我們)
- { Tell me the reason *for which* you left us.
- { This is the house *where* we once lived.
(此是吾等所曾住過一次之屋)
- { This is the house *in which* we once lived.

試照下文有一畫之記號如 — 之處，插入適當之從位接續詞或複牒副詞或疑問副詞：—

1. The wind beat against the house -- a part of the roof was blown off.
2. The bulls, -- they stood together, were a match for the lion; but -- they separated from each other, they fell an easy prey.
3. Tell me candidly -- you like my composition, and -- you think it shows signs of future promise.
4. No sooner had he gone to bed -- a telegram was brought in.
5. Elephants are not full-grown -- they are fifty or sixty years of age.
6. It is of no use for me to shoot, -- I am sure to miss the mark.
7. What can be gained in a place -- every one is poor?
8. This dreadful thought pursues me -- I go.
9. He was received with respect -- he went, and listened attentively -- he began to speak.
10. Remain -- thou art, -- I return.
11. Be ye wise -- serpents, but harmless -- doves.
12. The river had risen so high, -- we could not cross it even in a boat.
13. Present evils are sometimes less distressing -- expected ones.
14. Evil is meant by that man's words, smooth -- they are.
15. The more we study the human mind, the less able are

we to understand — it came into existence or — it had its source.

16. I am quite as much ashamed — you are.

17. I cannot fear any evil, — thou art near.

18. I will keep it by me night and day — any harm should come to it.

19. We are glad — he has succeeded so well, — he has thoroughly deserved it.

20. His success is the more creditable, — he had no help from any one, — many offered to help him.

21. At length the moon arose, — it was almost hidden by clouds.

22. They shut up all the shops, — the travellers might not be able to take anything by force.

23. Some men eat — they may live; others live — they may eat.

24. I am ready to start, — you may desire to do so.

25. The terrified women would have fled more quickly — they did, — they had not been burdened with baggage.

26. We can be happy, — we are poor, — we are contented.

27. I shall die of this disease, — I first die of hunger.

28. You have lied so often — no one will trust you, even you speak truth.

29. I will not rise from my seat, — I am bidden.

30. He was forced to get up, — he liked it — not.

31. On first coming here, — I was quite honest, every one so distrusted me, — for long time I found it difficult to live.

32. He gave the boy a prize, not — he had actually earned one, but — he might be induced to work harder next term.

33. Agriculture is the foundation of all wealth, — food is raised by this means; and no one, — clever he may be, can live without food.

34. Past errors may be regretted, but past moments, — they have once fled, are fled for ever and cannot be recalled.

35. The savages, — they saw the ship approaching their island, believed — it was some great animal moving on the water, — they had never seen a ship before.

36. The peasant grows pale, — he sees a cloud of locusts approach.

37. I do not doubt — you will succeed in time, — only you will persevere and trust — your labours will be at least rewarded.

38. She turned away in disgust, — she was unable to bear the sight any longer.

39. I will pay you down all that you ask, — you sign a receipt on a stamped paper.

40. They were willing to commence work, and begged — they might be ordered to do so, — they were still weak from the recent attack of fever.

41. The robber fled — he heard the shouts; but he escaped — any one had time to see his face.

42. Seed must be sown — it will germinate; and flowers must bloom for some time — they can turn into seed.

43. He walked on, — he was so tired — he could walk no farther: then he sat down and waited — food was brought to him.

44. Do — you are told; and then no one can blame you, a mistake has been made.

45. Tired — you are, you will finish your journey by twelve o'clock — you stop nowhere on the road.

答案及譯解

1. The wind.....house, *till* a part of.....
(風猛吹彼屋, 遂至屋蓋之一部都被吹去)
2. The bulls, *as long as* they.....lion; but *when* they separated.....
(牡牛等結合而立時, 雖得以抵拒獅子, 但其各自分離時, 則直爲獅子之餌耳)
3. Tell me candidly *whether* you.....and *whether* you.....
(汝好余之作文與否, 及以爲是將來之有望與否, 請明白告我)
4. No sooner.....bed *than* a telegram.....
(他方纔去睡, 而電報就携進來)
5. Elephants are not full-grown *till* they are.....
(象至五六十齡時, 則不十分長成)
6. It is of.....to shoot, *as* I am.....
(此是無用余射, 因余必不中其目的也)
7. What can.....a place *where* every one.....
(於人人皆贊之處所, 則何物可貯之哉)

8. This dreadful thought pursues me *wherever* I go.
(此恐怖之思慮, 余到何處都追及我)
9. He was.....respect *wherever* he went, and.....to attentively *wherever* he began to speak.
(他所到之處, 皆受尊敬之接待, 而且言出而人皆竊聽)
10. Remain *where* thou art *till* I return.
(余及至歸來時, 逗遛於汝現在之居所)
11. Be ye wise *as* serpents, but harmless *as* doves.
(汝等智如蛇, 而順良如鴿)
12. The river.....so high, *that* we could.....
(河水如此其高漲, 則我等不能乘小艇而渡之)
13. Present evils.....distressing *than* expected ones.
(現在之災害, 比於預期之災而畧少苦痛)
14. Evil is meant.....smooth *as* they are.
(縱其表面是滑, 然其人之言是有毒也)
15. The more we.....to understand *how* it came.....or *whence* it.....
(吾人愈研究人類之心理, 愈不能了解其如何存在, 及其起原在於何處)
16. I am quite much *as* ashamed *as* you are.
(羞恥則余與汝同有之)
17. I cannot fear any evil, *as long as* thou art near.
(汝近于我時, 則余遇如何災害而不知恐)
18. I will.....day, *lest* any harm.....
(無如何災害之發生, 余可晝夜保持之于我側)
19. We are glad *that* he.....well, *since* (或 *because, as*) he.....
(我等甚喜其成功之如此其充分, 因其有可成功之充分價值也)
20. His success.....creditable *as* he.....any one *though* many.....
(彼之成功, 可博高一層之名聲, 何則, 蓋雖多人願出力助他, 而彼不受諸人之助也)
21. At length.....aross, *although* it was.....
(月雖幾被掩于雲, 然究竟能昇)

22. They shut.....the shop, *that* the travellers.....
 (彼等已悉閉店, 如此則旅客不能以暴力取物)
23. Some men eat *that* they may live; others live *that* they.....
 (有人因食而生活, 有人爲生活而食)
24. I am.....start, *whenever* you may.....
 (汝願於何時出發, 余即爲出發之準備)
25. The terrified.....quickly *than* they did, *if* they had.....
 (恐怖之婦人, 若其無行李負載, 則逃走更速於平素)
26. We.....happy, *though* we are poor, *provided* we.....
 (吾人縱如此困窮, 然設吾心滿足, 即是幸福矣)
27. I shall.....disease, *unless* I first.....
 (余若不先因饑而死, 則將爲此病而死)
28. You.....often, *that* no one.....even *when* (或 *if*) you.....
 (汝已如此屢屢說謊, 則縱汝言真實時, 亦無人信汝矣)
29. I will.....my seat, *till* I am bidden.
 (余至受命時, 則余將不由吾位起立)
30. He was.....get up, *whether* he like it or not.
 (不拘彼之願來與不願, 亦被迫而起矣)
31. On first.....here, *though* I was.....distrusted me, *that* for.....
 (余雖十分正直, 但以初到此處, 人不我信, 故余久已覺得生活困難)
32. He gave.....prize, not *because* he.....one, but *that* he.....
 (彼之賜賞其童子, 非爲得實際之賞, 乃欲使其於次學期加一層用功也)
33. Agriculture is.....wealth, *since* is.....no one, *however* clever may be,...
 (農業者致富之本也, 凡食物出於斯, 無論人之如何聰明, 不能外食物而生)
34. Past errors.....moments, *when* they have.....
 (過去之過失, 猶可追悔; 但過去之時間, 其一次逸去, 則已成永久逸去而不能再呼反之矣)
35. The savages, *when* they save.....island, believed *that* it was.....
 (野蠻人見有船來近於其島時, 因彼等素未見過船之故, 而于是信

爲一大動搖浮游於水上矣)

36. The peasant grow pale. *when* he see.....
 (農夫見一群之飛蝗接近時, 則變爲顏色蒼白矣(大驚懼之意))
37. I do not doubt *that* you.....time, *if* only you.....trust, *that* your labours.....
 (汝若一意忍耐, 而且自信汝之功勞, 必可得最後之報酬, 則余可決汝有成功而無疑)
38. She turned.....disgust, *as* she was.....
 (彼女不能久忍見此光景, 故含嫌惡之意而轉向他方)
39. I will pay.....you ask, *provided* you.....
 (若汝署一收領字于貼印紙之紙上, 余將支給汝之一切請求)
40. They were.....and begged *that* they might.....do so, *although* they were.....
 (彼等雖近頃被襲于熱病而尙衰弱, 但其已肯開始辦事, 且請求而可任命矣)
41. The robber fled *as soon as* he.....shouts; but he escaped *before* any one.....
 (盜雖聞叫聲而即刻逃走, 但其于人未遠認其面時而失遁)
42. Seed.....sown *before* it will.....some time *before* they.....
 (種子不可不先於其發芽而播; 花不可不先於結實而開)
43. He walked on, *till* he was so tired *that* he could.....and waited *till* food was.....
 (彼已行至疲, 故已不能遠行; 于是坐下以待食物之持來而已)
44. Do *as* you are told; and.....you *if* a mistake.....
 (行如汝之所言, 則雖或有差誤, 亦無人得責備于汝矣)
45. Tired *as* (或 *though*) you are, you.....twelve o'clock, *provided* you stop.....
 (汝雖疲, 然設汝不稍休息于途中, 則至十二時必終汝之程途)

Chapter IX. 第九編

INTERJECTIONS, 感嘆詞

293. 感嘆詞若以嚴格論之，彼是不得稱爲一詞類，蓋以其對於文中之他語，本無文法上之關係也。

感嘆詞不過是一感嘆之聲字，投入於文中以表其強烈之感情即感動耳。（參照 §§ 13 及 14）：—

Joy (歡喜).—Hurrah! huzza!

Grief (悲哀).—Oh! ah! alas! alack!

Amusement (快樂).—Ha! ha!

Approval (讚賞).—Bravo!

Weariness (勞倦).—Heigh ho!

Attention (注意).—Lo! hark! hush! hist!

Reproof (譴責).—Fie! fie!

Contempt (輕侮)

or 或 { Stuff! hosh! tut-tut!
ridicule (嘲笑) { Pooh! pish! pshaw! tush!

To call some one (呼人).—Ho! holloa!

Doubt (懷疑).—Hum! hem! humph!

294. 於此有若干熟句，用之似感嘆詞以表壯烈之感情即感動者。

Ah me, 或 ay me! Woe is me! (嗚呼悲哉)

For shame (= *alas, on account of shame!*) (恥哉)

Alack a day (= *ah lack or loss on the day!*) (悲哉)

Hail, all hail (= *be hale or healthy!*) (康哉), *welcome!* (歡迎),
well done! (旨哉).

Good-bye (= *God be with ye!*), *adieu!* *farewell* (請請、告別)

Bad Luck to it! *O dear me* (= *O dear or costly for me!*)
(驚歎之辭)

Good gracious! *Good heavens!* (驚怪之辭). *Well to be sure!*
(驚怪之辭)

295. 於此有若干動詞之法及他種之詞類，可以用於感嘆之意義：—

(a) 名詞無定法。——*To think that he should have died!*
(以爲他已死矣) (參照 § 235 e).

(b) 前提法。——*Would** that I had gained that prize
(若余得其賞) (願望).

(c) 命令法。——*Hear! hear!* (讚賞)
(謹聽謹聽)

(d) 名詞。——*Dreadful sight!* (可怖之情景哉), *Foolish fellow!* (蠢漢), *fool!* (愚人), *Dunce!* (痴漢).

(e) 形容詞(或省略其名詞)。——*Strange!* (怪哉), *shocking!*
(可驚哉)

(f) 副詞。——*How very kind of you!* (汝真仁慈哉)
How wonderful! (真奇怪哉)

(g) 代名詞。——*What a sad thing it is!* (真悲哀之事哉)

(h) 接續詞。——*If I could only see him once more!*
(若余果得再見他一次……)

* 若寫此文之全體，應如左：——(If it) would (have been) that I had gained that prize! (I should have been very glad).

236. 有時急激之文，或感嘆之文，其助動詞與其主辭皆省略，而惟述出其主之動詞：—

Why dream and wait for him longer?—*Longfellow*,

(= Why dost thou 或 why do we wait for him longer?)

(何故我等尚長夢想他及待他乎)

上卷終



中學師範用

女子教科書

男女之職事不同
 其應用科學亦生
 差異本社輯譯女
 子教科全編其內
 容材料皆以切近
 女子事情為主體
 裁雖主簡約而重
 要處絕不忽畧其
 程度於中學師範
 皆甚相宜數學一
 部篇末各附答數
 尤便教授

▲	女子算術教科書	上	黃邦柱譯編	五角
▲	女子算術教科書	中	黃邦柱譯編	四角五分
▲	女子算術教科書	下	黃邦柱譯編	四角
▲	女子代數教科書		王應偉譯編	四角五分
▲	女子幾何教科書		黃邦柱譯編	四角五分
▲	女子化學教科書		陳文祥譯編	三角五分
▲	女子物理教科書		黃邦柱譯編	五角
▲	女子生理教科書		陳敬譯編	四角五分
▲	女子礦物教科書		黃邦柱譯編	二角
▲	女子動物教科書		編譯中	編譯中
▲	女子植物教科書		編譯中	編譯中
▲	女子家事教科書		費瑤珠譯編	五角五分
▲	女子簿記教科書		楊蘊三著	印刷中

書 科 教 學 數 校 學 中

取日本近年最通行之教科書為原本其材料與我國不合者悉行刪改譯編為中學校數學教科書其主旨在體例整嚴取材簡括使教者於教授時有講演發揮之餘地又別編各部問題詳解以備教者學者參攷自習之用尤為便利

部 之 何 幾

仇 毅 編 譯
平 面 八 角
立 體 六 角
問 題 詳 解 一 冊
定 價 七 角

部 之 術 算

趙 綵 易 應 岷 編 譯
定 價 一 元 二 角
問 題 詳 解 一 冊
定 價 九 角

部 之 角 三

黃 邦 柱 編 譯
平 面 價 六 角
問 題 詳 解
在 編 著 中

部 之 數 代

趙 綵 易 應 岷 編 譯
定 價 一 元 三 角
問 題 詳 解 一 冊
定 價 一 元 二 角

實 用 德 文 典

馮 雄 宇 譯

全書共分四十七章於品詞之性格及其變化論述甚詳 每一章內先述詞之用法次舉單語次列德文中譯之例次列中文德譯之例德文中單數複數男性女性之別分析最嚴 本書不憚詳述務使學者易於了解書中取材適當配飾整齊用作高等學校或高等專門學校教本極為相宜

一 元 二 角

和 漢 熟 語 字 典

陳 言 編

學日本文者學其文法甚易 識其奇字甚難 奇字者乃日本之方言俗語不能據字母以窺立途附合漢字以為標識 其義並不與漢字相同吾國人以字意讀之絕不能解 本書搜集其最通用者得數千字註以極詳之解說手此一編以讀日文可無隔閡之虞矣

一 元 二 角

漢 英 文 學 因 緣

蘇 元 瑛 編

是書為中人之通英文及英人之通中文者雜譯中國及英國極優美之詩詞而成中國之詩詞上溯周秦下迄近世皆有選錄悉英譯之英人之著作則又以漢文譯之 都七十餘首中國譯界得未曾有譯事巾惟詩詞最難顯達而此書之作 則皆詞氣湊泊神情宛肖不失原文意旨特此散見羣籍未嘗成書 受殊室主人 吾國之風於世界文學者也見而惜之因集錄以成是冊名之文學因緣蓋謂文學界中不可多得之書也

三 角 五 分

漢 釋 英 文 選

陳 仲 撰

是書乃美國華盛頓歐文 Washington Irving 三弟 初歐渡陸紀行之作都計三十四章所首多西歐風俗 文章幽秀嫺雅美若詩畫且騁辭輕妙絕無艱深難解之病 英俗巧於誇美而於是書則舉國上下皆喜讀之書中以一頁之半列原文以其中列漢釋 漢釋之文清潔無滓 尤為可貴卷末附錄英美作家表最便考知歷代名著

第 一 編 三 角

新撰英文作文教科書

趙灼編
全三冊

是書全編共分三卷計三十六課編法主旨用
文法兼繙譯作文既不失之過高復不
失之過低 例題概由漢譯英先解明漢文之文
法然後以英文對譯 不但可悟漢英文反
證之法亦於以知彼此結構之異同書
中問題皆應用本課法理并於卷末附以答案初
學讀此有得一進二之益無繁複凌越
之苦

第一冊 定價五角
第二冊 定價六角
第三冊 定價六角

新國民讀本

漢譯 詳註

陳家琪譯

伯利氏之新國民讀本 (New National Reader)
久已風行我國 惜原書無漢文初學者於
翻譯生字每以為苦讀者又多為時間所限
不能備為講說 茲特將其逐字對譯復以
意譯編為漢文 列之於次全書熟語別則作
一表務使讀者不假字典即能徹曉其
義習原書者得此本讀之 最能互證

第一冊 三角

編 灼 趙

年 分

箋 方 字 英

本方箋(俗名方塊字)用聯想記憶法每一箋以原文書其表譯文書其裏單字之下綴以整語以示應用變化之例舉一可以反三極省記憶之力其材料乃採集我國現行各英文讀本編纂而成全編(單字成語合約一萬有奇)(示例亦在六千以外)次序先後由淺及深裝成五盒大致分五學年學者習外國語最致力處在摘記生字是編每字一箋無異於摘抄而解說之詳明印製之堅美又決非摘抄所可及實習英文者不可少之妙品也

第一盒 定價五角

第二盒 定價五角

第三盒 定價七角

第四盒 定價七角

第五盒 定價七角

索引全 定價二角

中學英語教科書

楊 啓 瑞 譯 編

是書為日本正則英語學校最近改訂之課本體例新穎譯文暢達為我國從來英文課本所未有其最著之特色有二

(一)一課之中文法讀書作文會話四者兼備既非偏重又不繁蕪且更番講說極起學者興味

(二)於所舉譯例多運入科學常識為將來研究高深科學預植基礎

通常英文課本多雞鳴犬吠兒童嬉戲之詞於中學程度甚不適合是書則專為中學而作絕無此弊

第一 第二 價各五角

英 文 典

彭 毅 編 著

是書取材於日本越山平三郎英文典甚多越山氏研究英文極精著述亦富英文典其最近之作本書用之為主幹傍搜博採於他書者多至十數種去短取長新穎精當馬相伯先生有序謂體例該備行文顯達實近今未有之鉅製云英文法中煩難者為前置詞本書注重此點論之極詳末後並附句點法一篇凡讀文作文能了然於句點之法則則文中之抑揚頓挫必可心領而神會此亦本書之特長也

全一冊 一元五角

義 講 法 文 英 氏 納

編 譯 灼 趙

納士斐而文典 Nestfield's English Grammar

Series. 為英文新著中最善之作 近年

以來我國學校率皆用之以作教本 惟原書

係教科體裁學者每病其簡略 且全係

英文 無漢字適當之解說 本社取其全

書四卷演成講義 凡扼要處皆加註釋反

覆說明極其詳盡 并於原書所列問題一

一附以答案 曾習原文者得此本讀之

有反證融會促進記憶之益 而尤便於

教授

第一 五角 第三下 一元二角

第二 八角 第四上 一元五角

第三上 一元二角 第四下 一元五角

解 表 一 第 法 文 英 氏 納

分 六 角 一 ● 編 鼎 元 沈

是書乃將納士斐爾英文法第一册之大綱節目編列成表 英文與漢文並列 讀者一翻閱即能知全書之脈絡程序原書章節浩博極易遺忘 倘能時常覽溜此表用佐原書之不足於記憶上實有事半功倍之益

八 辛 人 舟

子我誕像而嚼歷讀聞福之海前齊國肥與之逸刺奇名世凡
同國殆之其之接者奇福苦七後名游小漂一語比畫之大書
工莊與怪想勢不有談珍樂次航其記人流篇中亞亞大有為

特 列 韓 子 皇

是書為索
士比亞 (Shakespeare)
而散文大
家查兒斯
納門叙其
概略者原
作與摩克
卑斯禮者
王阿講羅
三書稱為
四大悲劇
蕭得所謂
Imperial
Theater
與世界
文學界稱
王之名著
以此蓋傑
作中之傑
作也

宮 迷 特 離 穀

希羅馬之文
學羅伯
法律宗教
來之歐
所稱世歐
洲近世文
明之三
素而希臘
文而影
於近影
學其想
學大思
最藝之
奇古畫
文刻繪
彫刻之
料也
及海錄
法納阿
流語皆
述此古
文明斷
片其文
厚爾多
已(Shakespeare)
筆也

鳥 魂 反

是書為
丹麥文
豪安達
孫 (Soren Kierkegaard)
氏所著
本篇僅
收其二
章一則
於滑稽
中含高
古之詩
味一則
於悲哀
中寓玄
妙之神
奇讀之
者莫不
拍案叫
絕也

談 夢 舊 之 界 世 新

華盛頓二尹
(Washington Irving)
著之名實以
之得新書
故而斯克
書之最克
則本為所
新世之
夢以也
浦山化身
我之移世
睡年而者
十運推英
變其立
國於其
成途疑
後有誠
我奇不
離其變
名狀其
所數迎
由來矣

絕島日記

送利兒牌花
(Daniel Defoe) 氏英國
最有名之數
文大家之一
也其所著魯
濱孫絕島漂
海記開發英
人冒險之特
性我國學者
亦久已知之
本編所收即
魯濱孫二十
八年間棲栖
孤島中一年
之日記也其
內容如何無
俟贅言惟其
用筆精細而
又自然誠日
記中最上之
模範也

金色王

是書為英國最
有名之小說家
近世所稱為心
理小說鼻祖納
維里兒好曾
(Nathaniel
Howthorne)
氏所著藉希臘
之古談諷崇拜
黃金之愚陋其
筆致之妙寓意
之深非一冒所
能罄試一讀之
當能自知也

小人國遊記

是書與魯濱
孫流記舟人
辛八為航海
小說之三奇
書然漂流記
敘述英人冒
險與商業之
特性舟人辛
八爾想像奇
特而是書則
著意新穎優
於諷刺三書
皆各有所長
此書著者司
維夫特
(Swift)
氏十八世紀
散文全盛時
代最有名之
大家也

偉里市商人

是書為世
界文學冠
王所稱為
(萬魂詩
人) 索士
比亞 (Sha
kspeare)
氏所作最
噴傳於世
者也散文
大家在兒
斯納門為
青年研究
之便利計
因敘述其
概略則此
書之價值
可想矣

三美姬

著者為華
盛頓 (Washin
gton Irv
ing) 氏
世界最初
之文豪也
以著斯克
齊書著名
而此則其
所著阿爾
哈蒲納中
之一篇書
中敘述古
納達之左
利王漢翠
默德與其
妃之逸事
事跡奇妙
筆致優美
讀之每每
不忍釋手

註 詳 譯 漢

書叢學文英年青

是編選取英美兩國文字名家之作皆能立意新奇造詞精麗既意譯其全文復將難字別為解釋於文法例尤能解析明白雖程度初淺者但依次披覽即可無所疑閱讀新知故於斯學記憶及了解上最有助進之效篇中逸趣橫生可作文章觀亦可供說讀

第十編	第九編	第八編	第七編	第六編	第五編	第四編	第三編	第二編	第一編
新世界舊夢譚	反魂鳥	穀離特迷宮	皇子韓列特	舟人辛八	三美姬	偉里市商人	小人國遊記	金色王	絕島日記
謝國藻譯	陳文祥譯	陳家琪譯	陳文祥譯	陳家琪譯	李猶龍譯	周砥譯	陳亮初譯	李猶龍譯	周砥譯
五角	印刷中	印刷中	五角	印刷中	五角	四角	印刷中	五角	七角

英 文 書 翰 鑰

一 名 英 漢 尺 牘 大 全

黃 識 陳 光 益 合 編

書凡六編三十章一百一十餘節其中整篇尺牘三百餘首萃錦散句二千餘句信封信箋款式四十餘種名片款式二十餘種告白格式十餘種人之分類自名公巨卿至於士農工商各有舉例事之分類自慶祝弔唁銀錢往來至於家庭瑣屑分別為二十餘項關於社會上應有之尺牘殆已搜載無遺而於尺牘書寫收發之種種規則花郵片之書寫法名片之使用法等不憚詳細解剖反覆說明尤為難能而可貴譯文典雅高華絕無粗俗牽強之弊其後所附錄之八門因於尺牘有關遂並刊於是冊然在英籍中則皆各成一書是購一書不啻購多書也

定 價 大 洋 一 元 五 角

普通英華新字典

英國阿薩多羅著
叢 館 珠 譯

書為英國阿薩羅多博士原
著所舉皆極尋常通用凡得
四萬餘字專為高等小學及
中學校初級之用深僻高奇
悉屏不錄於翻閱之時間購
置所費用皆有節省之益

袖珍精裝本
定價大洋一元

中學英漢新字典

英國克司而著
孫 鈞 忠 譯

原著為最新英文袖珍字典於一千
九百十年出版字義解釋大半本於
英文百科大字典適用於中學及高
等專科及英文有三四年程度者極
尋常字概行節略而於科學專名習
用語俗語及一切疑難之字為尋常字
典所無者此書搜羅獨多解釋亦極
詳盡其特長殆非他書所及也

精裝全一冊
定價大洋一元

中英會話辭典

(著者 先湖東國美)

本書著者為美國博言博士 E. W. Fastlane. 東湖先生書中體例首編 摘取日常所用各種名詞形容詞分章節目別類提出 以便學者易於暗記 二編 為普通各種會話 三編 為商業各種會話 四編 為普通及商業往復各種信札其信札之稱呼格式以及商業上之常用省畧語字廣告樣式招牌文字等無不一一彙舉 計凡分一百六十餘類可謂搜羅宏富而剖別至於細微又臚列極有順序無絲毫凌雜紛亂之弊意有所需翻索即得其中會話體裁宛若兩人對坐互相應答按時按事徹始徹終尤為本書之特色 詢會話書中最整秩完備之作迥非徒然抄集多數散語而成者 所可望其項背者也

袖珍本
定價一元二角

英漢雙解辭典

小本一元六角

特製大版三元

字之構造本乎專事之意有淺深故字之義有顯晦淺顯者易說深晦者難明徵之各國莫不如是中英兩國地異俗殊 譯解之字典欲求字字悉與原文吻合毫無遺義實屬難能之事 海通數十年我國行用之英文字典僅只漢譯單解一種每有字義曲與不易知曉者非索致於英文原本不可然此非積學之士有所不能中等程度未易語此本社欲補斯缺特編此雙解之本 凡舉一字既有漢文譯解復列英文原解兩相比照真義自見可無疑闕不通之苦故附述其特色

(一) 讀漢譯單解詞典者 不能知英文原義之深微

(二) 讀英文單解詞典者 不能知漢文譯義之確詰

(三) 雙解對照 不僅能知英漢兩義之確否 並藉資翻譯之練習

(四) 作文會話 有雙解詞典以資考鏡 可免生澁牽強之弊

(五) 中等程度 能知英義確解 足為專門時代預植基礎 節省工力

雙解之益既述如右雖未敢因此抹殺一切單解之詞典然 其所以彌補單解詞典之缺項者實不為少不獨有助於漢譯之本並能補英文原本所不及此蓋我國前此所無而當今 僅有之本也

美完最

典辭漢英

色特

- (1) 於每詞之下註 (名) n. (動) v. (代) pro. (助) conj. (植) (續)
- (2) (釋)等字記號清晰一見瞭然
- (3) 一字有數解者以(一)(二)(三)等號別之使之瞭然不生混誤
- (4) 初學每苦於發音本書於每字上除統區分字音符號外其尤難發音者更以別音釋之附加圓形括弧尤為明白易曉
- (5) 凡名詞以加 color 形容詞加 in the 副詞加 in 等而成者即附於其原字之下既不空占篇幅復易知其字源
- (6) 凡實物名詞為我國未曾經見之物或西洋古代之物僅以官詞尚不能表明者即示以圖圖皆製用極精影版與實物原形全無差異且多至數百幅
- (7) 凡語尾有變化之動詞形容詞及不規則動詞既依次列入原字下復於書後編列詳表以備檢查
- (8) 熟譯專用語搜羅極詳且用精體斜體兩種字體印出以醒眉目
- (9) 凡名詞不能以單簡語句表明者於譯名之後更詳為註釋且以方形括弧之俾與正文有別
- (10) 譯名雖力求正確但我國方言不一吻合其難凡遇歐美人名地名均附英文以期明顯
- (11) 詞典以攜帶輕便為最要故字形宜小行列宜多頁數宜少冊本宜薄本書則兼而有之

角五元一價定

第一珍袖裝精

分發行所
總發行所

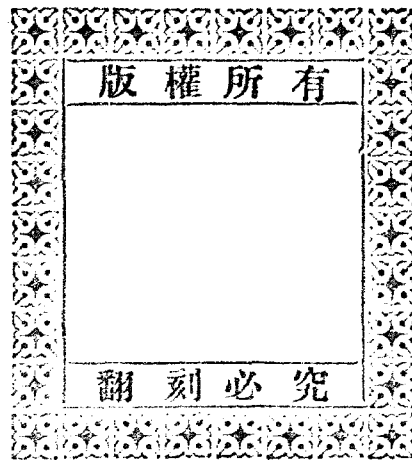
長沙府正街
上海棋盤街

羣益圖書公司
羣益書社

印刷所
羣益書社印刷所

發者行
英文研究會

譯述者
甯陽趙灼



民國六年十月十八日訂正四版

英文法講義第三上卷

定價大洋壹元貳角

